



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

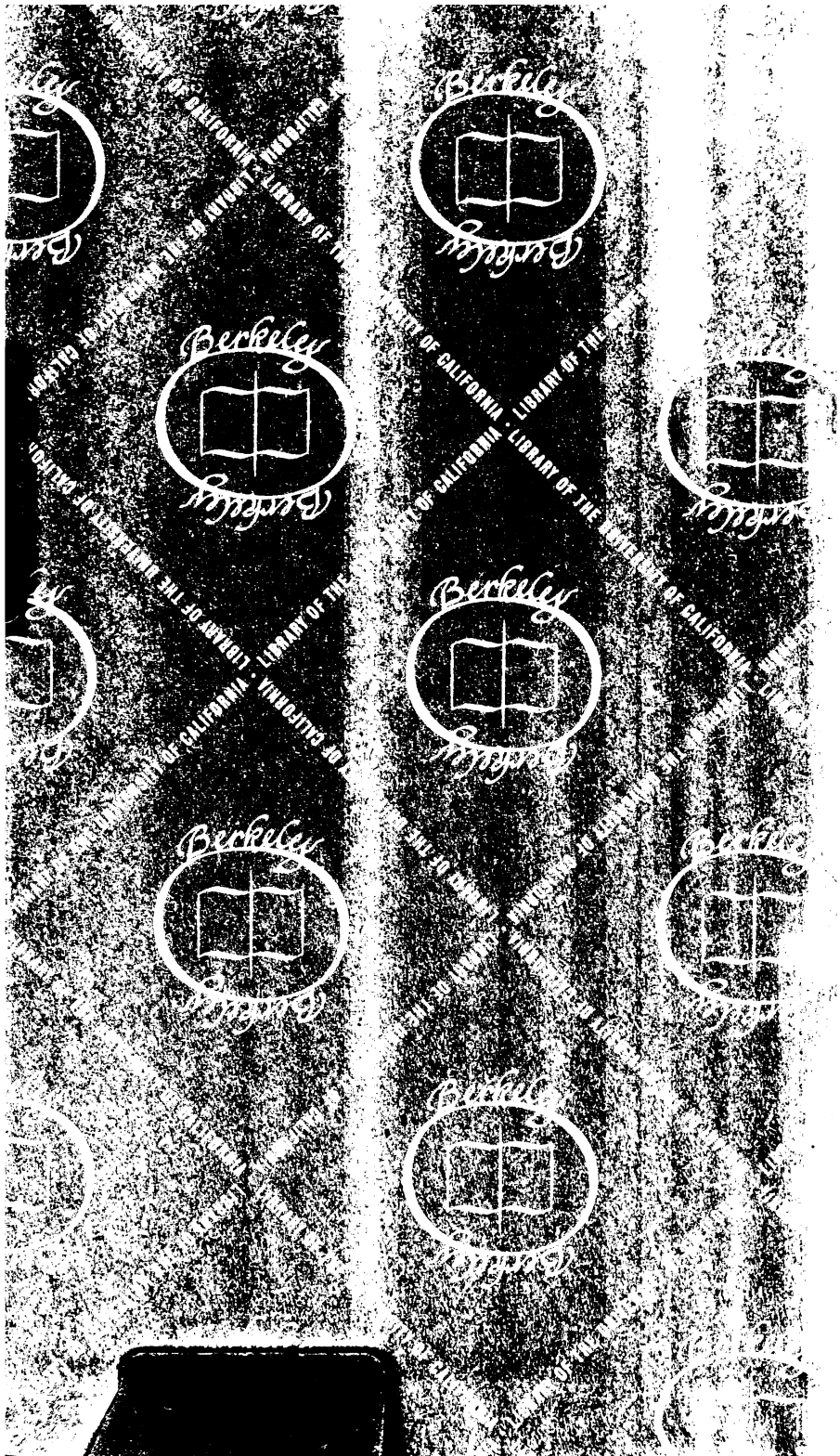
### **About Google Book Search**

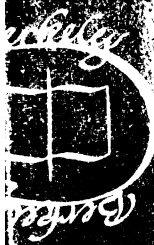
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF



B 3 919 781





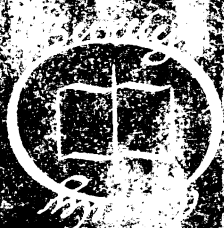
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY









**THE POETICS OF ARISTOTLE**





THE  
POETICS OF ARISTOTLE

EDITED

WITH CRITICAL NOTES AND A TRANSLATION

BY

S. H. BUTCHER

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH; FORMERLY FELLOW OF  
TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, OXFORD;  
HON. LL.D. GLASGOW; HON. LITT.D. DUBLIN

THIRD EDITION REVISED

London  
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
1902

*All rights reserved*

*First Edition 1895*  
*Second Edition 1898*  
*Third Edition 1902*

W/C. 513471

B 441  
A 5 B 8  
1902  
Cop. 2.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

THE following Text and Translation of the *Poetics* form part of the volume entitled *Aristotle's Theory of Poetry and Fine Art*, second edition (Macmillan and Co., 1898). In this edition the Critical Notes are enlarged, and the Translation has been carefully revised. The improvements in the Translation are largely due to the invaluable aid I have received from my friend and colleague, Professor W. R. Hardie. To him I would express my warmest thanks, and also to another friend, Professor Tyrrell, who has most kindly read through the proof-sheets, and talked over and elucidated various questions of interpretation and criticism.

In making use of the mass of critical material which has appeared in recent years, especially in Germany, I have found it necessary to observe a strict principle of selection, my aim still being to keep the notes within limited compass. They are not intended to form a complete *Apparatus Criticus*, still less to do duty for a commentary. I trust, however, that no variant or conjectural

v

emendation of much importance has been overlooked.

In the first edition I admitted into the text conjectural emendations of my own in the following passages:—iii. 3: xix. 3: xxiii. 1: xxiv. 10: xxv. 4: xxv. 14: xxv. 16. Of these, one or two appear to have carried general conviction (in particular, xxiii. 1): two are now withdrawn,—iii. 3 and xxv. 14, the latter in favour of <οἰουοῦν> (Tucker).

In the first edition, moreover, I bracketed, in a certain number of passages, words which I regarded as glosses that had crept into the text, viz. :—iii. 1: vi. 18: xvii. 1: xvii. 5. In vi. 18 I now give Gomperz's correction τῶν λεγομένων, for the bracketed words τῶν μὲν λόγων of the MSS., and in xvii. 5 Bywater's conjecture ὅτι αὐτός for [τινὰς αὐτός].

There remains a conjecture which I previously relegated to the notes, but which I now take into the text with some confidence. It has had the good fortune to win the approval of many scholars, including the distinguished names of Professor Susemihl and Professor Tyrrell. I refer to οὐ (οὔτω MSS.) τὰ τυχόντα ὀνόματα in ix. 5. 1451 b 13, where the Arabic has 'names not given at random.' For the copyist's error cf. ix. 2. 1451 a 36, where A<sup>c</sup> has οὔτω, though οὐ τὸ rightly appears in the 'apographa': and for

a similar omission of *οὐ* in A° cf. vi. 12. 1450 a 29, *οὐ ποιήσει δὲ ἦν τῆς τραγωδίας ἔργον*, the indispensable negative being added in ‘apographa’ and found in the Arabic. The emendation not only gives a natural instead of a strained sense to the words *τὰ τυχόντα ὀνόματα*, but also fits in better with the general context, as I have argued in *Aristotle’s Theory of Poetry*, etc. (ed. 3 pp. 375–8).

Another conjecture of my own I have ventured to admit into the text. In the much disputed passage, vi. 8. 1450 a 12, I read <πάντες> *ὡς εἰπεῖν* for *οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν ὡς εἰπεῖν* of the MSS., following the guidance of Diels and of the Arabic. I regard *οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν* as a gloss which displaced part of the original phrase (see Critical Notes). As a parallel case I have adduced *Rhet.* i. 1. 1354 a 12, where *οὐδὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν*, the reading in the margin of A°, ought, I think, to be substituted in the text for the accepted reading *ὀλίγον*. The word *ὀλίγον* is a natural gloss on *οὐδὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν*, but not so *οὐδὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν* on *ὀλίγον*.

In two other difficult passages the *Rhetoric* may again be summoned to our aid. In xvii. 1. 1455 a 27 I have (as in the first edition) bracketed *τὸν θεατὴν*, the object to be supplied with *ἐλάνθανεν* being, as I take it, the poet, not the audience. This I have now illustrated by another gloss of a precisely similar kind in *Rhet.* i. 2. 1358 a 8, where *λανθάνουσιν τε* [*τοὺς ἀκροατὰς*] has long been

recognised as the true reading, the suppressed object being not the audience but the rhetoricians.

Once more, in xxiv. 9. 1460 a 23, where A<sup>c</sup> gives the meaningless *ἄλλου δέ*, I read (as in the first edition) *ἀλλ' οὐδέ*, following the reviser of A<sup>c</sup>. This reading, which was accepted long ago by Vettori, has been strangely set aside by the chief modern editors, who either adopt a variant *ἄλλο δέ* or resort to conjecture, with the result that *προσθεῖναι* at the end of the sentence is forced into impossible meanings. A passage in the *Rhetoric*, i. 2. 1357 a 17 ff., appears to me to determine the question conclusively in favour of *ἀλλ' οὐδὲ . . . ἀνάγκη . . . προσθεῖναι*. The passage runs thus: *ἐὰν γὰρ ἤ τι τούτων γνώριμον, οὐδὲ δεῖ λέγειν· αὐτὸς γὰρ τοῦτο προστίθῃσιν ὁ ἀκροατής, οἷον ὅτι Δωριεὺς στεφανίτην ἀγῶνα νενίκηκεν, ἱκανὸν εἰπεῖν ὅτι Ὀλύμπια γὰρ νενίκηκεν, τὸ δ' ὅτι στεφανίτης τὰ Ὀλύμπια, οὐδὲ δεῖ προσθεῖναι· γιγνώσκουσι γὰρ πάντες*. The general idea is closely parallel to our passage of the *Poetics*, and the expression of it similar even to the word *οὐδέ* (where the bare *οὐ* might have been expected) in the duplicated phrase *οὐδὲ δεῖ λέγειν, οὐδὲ δεῖ προσθεῖναι*. One difficulty still remains. The subject to *εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι* is omitted. To supply it in thought is not, perhaps, impossible, but it is exceedingly harsh, and I have accordingly in this edition accepted Professor Tucker's conjecture, *ἀνάγκη <κακείνο> εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι*.

The two conjectures of my own above mentioned are based on or corroborated by the Arabic. I ought to add, that in the Text and Critical Notes generally I have made a freer use than before of the Arabic version (concerning which see p. 4). But it must be remembered that only detached passages, literally rendered into Latin in Professor Margoliouth's *Analecta Orientalia* (D. Nutt 1887), are as yet accessible to those like myself who are not Arabic scholars; and that even if the whole were before us in a literal translation, it could not safely be used by any one unfamiliar with Syriac and Arabic, save with the utmost caution and subject to the advice of experts. Of the precise value of this version for the criticism of the text, no final estimate can yet be made. But it seems clear that in several passages it carries us back to a Greek original earlier than any of our existing MSS. Two striking instances may here be noted:—

(1) i. 6–7. 1447 a 29 ff., where the Arabic confirms Ueberweg's excision of *ἐποποιία* and the insertion of *ἀνώνυμος* before *τυγχάνουσα*, according to the brilliant conjecture of Bernays (see Margoliouth, *Analecta Orientalia*, p. 47).

(2) xxi. 1. 1457 a 36, where for *μεγαλιωτῶν* of the MSS. Diels has, by the aid of the Arabic, restored the word *Μασσαλιωτῶν*, and added a most ingenious and convincing explanation of *Ἐρμokaï-*



κόξανθος (see Critical Notes). This emendation is introduced for the first time into the present edition. Professor Margoliouth tells me that Diels' restoration of ἐπενξάμενος in this passage is confirmed by the fact that the same word is employed in the Arabic of Aristotle's *Rhetoric* to render εὔχεσθαι.

Another result of great importance has been established. In some fifty instances where the Arabic points to a Greek original diverging from the text of A<sup>c</sup>, it confirms the reading found in one or other of the 'apographa,' or conjectures made either at the time of the Renaissance or in a more recent period. It would be too long to enumerate the passages here; they will be found noted as they occur. In most of these examples the reading attested by the Arabic commands our undoubting assent. It is, therefore, no longer possible to concede to A<sup>c</sup> the unique authority claimed for it by Vahlen.

I have consulted by the side of Professor Margoliouth's book various criticisms of it, e.g. by Susemihl in *Berl. Phil. Wochenschr.* 1891, p. 1546, and by Diels in *Sitzungsber. der Berl. Akad.* 1888, p. 49. But I have also enjoyed the special benefit of private communication with Professor Margoliouth himself upon a number of difficulties not dealt with in his *Analecta Orientalia*. He has most generously put his learning at my disposal,

and furnished me, where it was possible to do so, with a literal translation. In some instances the Arabic is itself obscure, and throws no light on the difficulty; frequently, however, I have been enabled to indicate in the notes whether the existing text is supported by the Arabic or not.

In the following passages I have in this edition adopted emendations which are suggested or confirmed by the Arabic, but which did not find a place in the first edition:—

- ii. 3. 1448 a 15, ὡσπερ οἱ τοὺς<sup>1</sup>
- vi. 7. 1450 a 17, <ὁ δὲ βίος>, omitting καὶ εὐδαιμονίας καὶ ἡ εὐδαιμονία of the MSS.
- xi. 6. 1452 b 10, [τούτων δὲ . . . εἴρηται]
- xviii. 6. 1456 a 24, <καὶ> εἰκὸς<sup>2</sup>
- xx. 5. 1456 b 35, <οὐκ> ἄνευ<sup>2</sup>
- xxi. 1. 1457 a 34, [καὶ ἀσήμου]. The literal translation of the Arabic is 'and of this some is compounded of significant and insignificant, only not in so far as it is significant in the noun'
- xxi. 1. 1457 a 36, Μασσαλιωτῶν (see above, p. ix.)
- xxv. 17. 1461 b 12, <καὶ ἴσως ἀδύνατον>

I hesitate to add to this list of corroborated conjectures that of Dacier, now admitted into the text of xxiii. 1. 1459 a 21, καὶ μὴ ὁμοίως ἱστορίας τὰς συνθέσεις, for καὶ μὴ ὁμοίως ἱστορίας τὰς συνήθεις

<sup>1</sup> In ed. 3 I simply give the MSS. reading in the text, ὡσπερ †γὰς†.

<sup>2</sup> In ed. 3 the words here added are omitted in the text.

of the MSS. The Arabic, as I learn from Professor Margoliouth, is literally 'and in so far as he does not introduce (or, there do not enter) into these compositions stories which resemble.' This version appears to deviate both from our text and from Dacier's conjecture. There is nothing here to correspond to *συνήθεις* of the MSS.; on the other hand, though *συνθέσεις* may in some form have appeared in the Greek original, it is not easy to reconstruct the text which the translation implies. Another conjecture, communicated privately to me by Mr. T. M'Vey, well deserves mention. It involves the simpler change of *ὁμοίως* to *οἷως*. The sense then is, 'and must not be like the ordinary histories'; the demonstr. *τοιούτους* being sunk in *οἷως*, so that *οἷαι ἱστορίαι αἱ συνήθεις* becomes by attraction, *οἷας ἱστορίας τὰς συνήθεις*.

I subjoin a few other notes derived from correspondence with Professor Margoliouth:—

(α) Passages where the Arabic confirms the reading of the MSS. as against proposed emendation:—

- iv. 14. 1449 a 27, *ἐκβαίνοντες τῆς λεκτικῆς ἀρμονίας*: Arabic, 'when we depart from dialectic composition.' (The meaning, however, is obviously misunderstood.)
- vi. 18. 1450 b 13, *τῶν μὲν λόγων*: Arabic, 'of the speech.' The *μὲν* is not represented, but, owing to the Syriac form of that particle being identical with the Syriac for the preposition 'of,' it was

likely to be omitted here by the translator or copyist.

xviii. 1. 1455 b 25. The Arabic agrees with the MSS. as to the position of *πολλάκις*, 'as for things which are from without and certain things from within sometimes.'

xviii. 5. 1456 a 19, *καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀπλοῖς πράγμασι*: Arabic, 'and in the simple matters.'

xix. 2. 1456 a 38, *τὰ πάθη παρασκευάζειν*: Arabic, 'to prepare the sufferings.'

More doubtful is xvii. 2. 1455 a 30, *ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς φύσεως*: Arabic, 'in one and the same nature.' The Arabic mode of translation is not decisive as between the MSS. reading and the conjecture *ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῆς φύσεως*, but rather favours the former.

(b) Passages where the conjectural omission of words is apparently supported by the Arabic:—

ix. 9. 1451 b 31, *οἷα ἂν εἰκὸς γενέσθαι καὶ δυνατὰ γενέσθαι*: Arabic, 'there is nothing to prevent the condition of some things being therein like those which are supposed to be.' But we can hardly say with certainty which of the two phrases the Arabic represents.

xvi. 4. 1454 b 31, *οἷον Ὀρέστης ἐν τῇ Ἰφιγενείᾳ ἀνεγνώρισεν ὅτι Ὀρέστης*: Arabic, 'as in that which is called Iphigenia, and that is whereby Iphigenia argued that it was Orestes.' This seems to point to the omission of the first *Ὀρέστης*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vahlen (*Hermeneutische Bemerkungen zu Aristoteles' Poetik* ii. 1898, pp. 3–4) maintains that the inference drawn from the Arabic is doubtful, and he adds strong objections on other grounds to Diels' excision of the first *Ὀρέστης*.

In neither of these passages, however, have I altered the MSS. reading.

(c) Passages on which the Arabic throws no light :—

- i. 9. 1447 b 22. The only point of interest that emerges is that in the Arabic rendering ('of all the metres we ought to call him poet') there is no trace of *καί*, which is found alike in A° and the 'apographa.'
- x. 3. 1452 a 20. The words *γίγνεσθαι ταῦτα* are simply omitted in the Arabic.
- xxv. 18. 1461 b 18, *ὥστε καὶ αὐτὸν* MSS. The line containing these words is not represented in the Arabic.
- xxv. 19. 1461 b 19, *ὅταν μὴ ἀνάγκης οὐσης μηδὲν . . .*  
The words in the Arabic are partly obliterated, partly corrupt.

In conclusion, I desire to acknowledge my obligations to friends, such as Mr. B. Bosanquet (whose *History of Aesthetic* ought to be in the hands of all students of the subject), Dr. A. W. Verrall, Mr. W. J. Courthope, Mr. A. O. Prickard, and Rev. Dr. Lock, who have written me notes on particular points, and to many reviewers by whose criticism I have profited. In a special sense I am indebted to Professor Susemihl for his review of my first edition in the *Berl. Phil. Wochenschr.*, 28th September 1895, as well as for the instruction derived from his numerous articles on the *Poetics*, extending over many years in Bursian's *Jahresbericht* and else-

where. Among other reviewers to whom I feel grateful, I would mention Mr. Herbert Richards in the *Classical Review*, May 1895; Mr. R. P. Hardie in *Mind*, vol. iv. No. 15; and the authors of the unsigned articles in the *Saturday Review*, 2nd March 1895, and the *Oxford Magazine*, 12th June 1895.

To Messrs. R. & R. Clark's Reader I would once again express no merely formal thanks.

EDINBURGH, *November* 1897.



## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN the revision of the Text and the Critical Notes I have had the advantage of consulting two new editions, based on very different principles, those of Professor Bywater and Professor Tucker, from both of which I have derived assistance. In Professor Bywater's edition I have noted the following passages in which manuscript authority (Parisinus 2038) is cited for readings which hitherto have been given as conjectural:—i. 4. 1447 a 21; xi. 5. 1452 b 3 and 4; xv. 1. 1454 a 19; xviii. 1. 1455 b 32; xxii. 7. 1458 b 20 and 29; xxiv. 8. 1460 a 13; xxv. 4. 1460 b 19; xxv. 16. 1461 b 3 and 17, 1461 b 13; xxvi. 3. 1462 a 5; xxvi. 6. 1462 b 6. I am also indebted to Professor Bywater's text for several improvements in punctuation. Most of his important emendations had appeared before the publication of my earlier editions, and had already found a place in the text or in the notes.

I now append the chief passages in which the



text of this edition differs from that of the last:—

- vii. 6. 1451 a 9. Here I keep the reading of the MSS., ὡς περ ποτὲ καὶ ἄλλοτὲ φασίν. Schmidt's correction εἰώθασιν for φασίν seemed at first sight to be confirmed by the Arabic, but, as Vahlen argues (*Hermeneutische Bemerkungen zu Aristoteles' Poetik*, 1897), this is doubtful, and—a more fundamental objection—the question arises whether the correction can, after all, convey the sense intended. Can the words as emended refer to a known practice in *present* time, 'as is the custom on certain other occasions also,' i.e. in certain other contests, the ἀγῶνες of the law-courts being thus suggested? As to this I have always had misgivings. Further observation has convinced me that ποτὲ καὶ ἄλλοτε can only mean 'at some other time also,' in an indefinite past or future. With φασίν (sc. ἀγωνίσασθαι) the reference must be to the past. This lands us in a serious difficulty, for the use of the κλεψύδρα in regulating dramatic representations is otherwise unheard of. Still it is conceivable that a report of some such old local custom had reached the ears of Aristotle, and that he introduces it in a parenthesis with the φασίν of mere hearsay.
- ix. 7. 1451 b 21. I accept Welcker's ἄνθεϊ for ἄνθευ. Professor Bywater is, I think, the first editor who has admitted this conjecture into the text.
- xvii. 5. 1455 b 22. I restore the MSS. reading ἀναγνωρίσας τινάς, which has been given up by almost all editors, even the most conservative. Hitherto a parallel was wanting for the required

meaning, 'having made certain persons acquainted with him,' 'having caused them to recognise him.' But Vahlen (*Herm. Bemerk.* 1898) has, if I am not mistaken, established beyond question this rare and idiomatic use of the verb by a reference to Diodorus Siculus iv. 59. 6, and by the corresponding use of *γνωρίζω* in Plut. *Vit. Thes.* ch. xii.

xix. 3. 1456 b 8. For *ἡδέα* of the MSS. I now read *ἡ διάνοια*. (Previously I had accepted Tyrwhitt's correction *ἡδη ἃ δεῖ*.) This conjecture was first made by Spengel, and strong arguments in its favour have recently been urged by V. Wróbel in a pamphlet in which this passage is discussed (Leopoli 1900).

xxv. 6. 1458 b 12. For *μέτρον* I now read *μέτριον* with Spengel. (So also Bywater.) Is it possible that in xxvi. 6. 1462 b 7 we should similarly read *τῷ τοῦ μετρίου* (*μέτρον* codd.) *μήκει*, 'a fair standard of length'?

In xiv. 8-9. 1454 a 2-4 a much vexed question is, I am disposed to think, cleared up by a simple alteration proposed by Neidhardt, who in a 2 reads *κράτιστον* for *δεύτερον*, and in a 4 *δεύτερον* for *κράτιστον*. This change, however, I have not introduced into the text.

The Arabic version once more throws interesting light on a disputed reading. In xvii. 2. *ἐκστατικοί* instead of *ἐξεταστικοί* is a conjecture supported by one manuscript. In confirmation of this reading, which has always seemed to me correct, I extract the following note by Professor Margoliouth (*Class.*

*Rev.* 1901, vol. xv. 54):—‘Professor Butcher . . . informed me that a continental scholar had asserted that the Arabic read *ἐκστατικοί* for *ἐξεταστικοί* in this passage. I had been unable to satisfy myself about the Arabic word intended by the writer of the Paris MS., and therefore could not confirm this; but I must regret my want of perspicacity, for I have now no doubt that the word intended is ‘*ajabiyyīna*, which is vulgar Arabic for “buffoons,” literally “men of wonder.” The Syriac translated by this word will almost certainly have been *mathh’rānē*, a literal translation of *ἐκστατικοί*, which the Syriac translator probably thought meant “men who produce ecstasies.” The verb *ἐξίστασθαι* is not unfrequently rendered by the Syriac verb whence this word is derived.’

In a few other passages the Critical Notes or Translation contain new matter; e.g. ix. 8. 1451 b 23; xvi. 7. 1455 a 14; xxiv. 10. 1460 b 1; xxvi. 6. 1462 b 7.

I cannot in concluding omit a word of cordial thanks to Messrs. R. & R. Clark’s accomplished Reader.

EDINBURGH, *October* 1902.

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
EDITIONS, TRANSLATIONS, ETC. . . . .	xxiii
ANALYSIS OF ARISTOTLE'S <i>Poetics</i> . . . . .	1
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	4
TEXT AND TRANSLATION OF THE <i>Poetics</i> . . . . .	6



## EDITIONS, TRANSLATIONS, ETC.

THE following is a list of the chief editions and translations of the *Poetica*, and of other writings relating to this treatise, arranged in chronological order:—

- Valla (G.), Latin translation. Venice, 1498.  
Aldine text, in *Rhetores Graeci*. Venice, Aldus, 1508.  
Latin translation, with the summary of Averroes (ob. 1198). Venice, Arrivabene, 1515.  
Pazzi (A.) [Paccius], *Aristotelis Poetica, per Alexandrum Paccium, patritium Florentinum, in Latinum conversa*. Venice, Aldus, 1536.  
Trincaveli, Greek text. Venice, 1536.  
Robortelli (Fr.), *In librum Aristotelis de Arte Poetica explicationes*. Florence, 1548.  
Segni (B.), *Rettorica e Poetica d' Aristotele tradotte di Greco in lingua vulgare*. Florence, 1549.  
Maggi (V.) [Madius], *In Aristotelis librum de Poetica explanationes*. Venice, 1550.  
Vettori (P.) [Victorius], *Commentationes in primum librum Aristotelis de Arte Poetarum*. Florence, 1560.  
Castelvetro (L.), *Poetica d' Aristotele vulgarizzata*. Vienna, 1570; Basle, 1576.  
Piccolomini (A.), *Annotazioni nel libro della Poetica d' Aristotele, con la traduzione del medesimo libro in lingua volgare*. Venice, 1575.  
Casaubon (I.), edition of Aristotle. Leyden, 1590.  
Heinsius (D.) recensuit. Leyden, 1610.  
Goulston (T.), Latin translation. London, 1623, and Cambridge, 1696.  
Dacier, *La Poétique traduite en Français, avec des remarques critiques*. Paris, 1692.  
Batteux, *Les quatre Poétiques d' Aristote, d' Horace, de Vida, de Despréaux, avec les traductions et des remarques par l'Abbé Batteux*. Paris, 1771.

- Winstanley (T.), commentary on *Poetics*. Oxford, 1780.
- Reiz, *De Poetica Liber*. Leipzig, 1786.
- Metastasio (P.), *Estratto dell' Arte Poetica d' Aristotele e considerazioni sulla medesima*. Paris, 1782.
- Twining (T.), *Aristotle's Treatise on Poetry, Translated: with notes on the Translation, and on the original; and two Dissertations on Poetical and Musical Imitation*. London, 1789.
- Pye (H. J.), *A Commentary illustrating the Poetic of Aristotle by examples taken chiefly from the modern poets. To which is prefixed a new and corrected edition of the translation of the Poetic*. London, 1792.
- Tyrwhitt (T.), *De Poetica Liber. Textum recensuit, versionem refinxit, et animadversionibus illustravit Thomas Tyrwhitt*. Oxford, 1794.
- Buhle (J. T.), *De Poetica Liber*. Göttingen, 1794.
- Hermann (Godfrey), *Ars Poetica cum commentariis*. Leipzig, 1802.
- Gräfenham (E. A. W.), *De Arte Poetica librum denuo recensuit, commentariis illustravit, etc.* Leipzig, 1821.
- Raumer (Fr. v.), *Ueber die Poetik des Aristoteles und sein Verhältniss zu den neuern Dramatikern*. Berlin, 1829.
- Spengel (L.), *Ueber Aristoteles' Poetik in Abhandlungen der Münchener Akad. philos.-philol. Cl. II.* Munich, 1837.
- Ritter (Fr.), *Ad codices antiquos recognitam, latine conversam, commentario illustratam edidit Franciscus Ritter*. Cologne, 1839.
- Egger (M. E.), *Essai sur l'histoire de la Critique chez les Grecs, suivi de la Poétique d'Aristote et d'extraits de ses Problèmes, avec traduction française et commentaire*. Paris, 1849.
- Bernays (Jacob), *Grundzüge der verlorenen Abhandlung des Aristoteles über Wirkung der Tragödie*. Breslau, 1857.
- Saint-Hilaire (J. B.), *Poétique traduite en français et accompagnée de notes perpétuelles*. Paris, 1858.
- Stahr (Adolf), *Aristoteles und die Wirkung der Tragödie*. Berlin, 1859.
- Stahr (Adolf), German translation, with Introduction and notes. Stuttgart, 1860.
- Liepert (J.), *Aristoteles über den Zweck der Kunst*. Passau, 1862.
- Susemihl (F.), *Aristoteles Ueber die Dichtkunst, Griechisch und Deutsch und mit sacherklärenden Anmerkungen*. Leipzig, 1865 and 1874.
- Vahlen (J.), *Beiträge zu Aristoteles' Poetik*. Vienna, 1865.
- Spengel (L.), *Aristotelische Studien IV.* Munich, 1866.
- Vahlen (J.) recensuit. Berlin, 1867.
- Teichmüller (G.), *Aristotelische Forschungen. I. Beiträge zur Erklärung der Poetik des Aristoteles. II. Aristoteles' Philosophie der Kunst*. Halle, 1869.
- Ueberweg (F.), German translation and notes. Berlin, 1869.

- Reinkens (J. H.), *Aristoteles über Kunst, besonders über Tragödie*. Vienna, 1870.
- Döring (A.), *Die Kunstlehre des Aristoteles*. Jena, 1870.
- Ueberweg (F.), *Aristotelis Ars Poetica ad fidem potissimum codicis antiquissimi A° (Parisiensis 1741)*. Berlin, 1870.
- Bywater (I.), *Aristotelia in Journal of Philology*, v. 117 ff. and xiv. 40 ff. London and Cambridge, 1873 and 1885.
- Vahlen (J.) iterum recensuit et adnotatione critica auxit. Berlin, 1874.
- Moore (E.), Vahlen's text with notes. Oxford, 1875.
- Christ (W.) recensuit. Leipzig, 1878 and 1893.
- Bernays (Jacob), *Zwei Abhandlungen über die Aristotelische Theorie des Drama*. Berlin, 1880.
- Brandscheid (F.), Text, German translation, critical notes and commentary. Wiesbaden, 1882.
- Wharton (E. R.), Vahlen's text with English translation. Oxford, 1883.
- Margoliouth (D.), *Analecta Orientalia ad Poeticam Aristoteleam*. London, 1887.
- Bénard (C.), *L'Esthétique d'Aristote*. Paris, 1887.
- Gomperz (T.), *Zu Aristoteles' Poetik*, I. (c. i.-vi.). Vienna, 1888.
- Heidenhain (F.), *Averrois Paraphrasis in librum Poeticæ Aristotelis Jacob Mantino interprete*. Leipzig, 1889.
- Prickard (A. O.), *Aristotle on the Art of Poetry. A Lecture with two Appendices*. London, 1891.
- La Poétique d'Aristote, Manuscrit 1741 Fonds Grec de la Bibliothèque Nationale*. Préface de M. Henri Omont. Photolithographie de MM. Lumière. Paris, 1891.
- Carroll (M.), *Aristotle's Poetics in the Light of the Homeric Scholia*. Baltimore, 1895.
- Gomperz (T.), *Aristoteles' Poetik. Uebersetzt und eingeleitet*. Leipzig, 1895.
- Gomperz (T.), *Zu Aristoteles' Poetik*, II., III. Vienna, 1896.
- Bywater (I.), *Aristotelis de Arte Poetica Liber*. Oxford, 1897.
- Vahlen (J.), *Hermeneutische Bemerkungen zu Aristoteles' Poetik: Sitzungsberichte der K. preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin*, 1897 xxix, 1898 xxi.
- Spingarn (J. E.), *A History of Literary Criticism in the Renaissance*. New York, 1899.
- Tucker (T. G.), *Aristotelis Poetica*. London, 1899.
- Saintsbury (G.), *A History of Criticism*, Vol. I. Edinburgh and London, 1900.
- Finsler (G.), *Platon und die Aristotelische Poetik*. Leipzig, 1900.
- Courthope (W. J.), *Life in Poetry: Law in Taste*. London, 1901.





# ARISTOTLE'S POETICS

## ANALYSIS OF CONTENTS

I. 'Imitation' (*μιμησις*) the common principle of the Arts of Poetry, Music, Dancing, Painting, and Sculpture. These Arts distinguished according to the Medium or material Vehicle, the Objects, and the Manner of Imitation. The Medium of Imitation is Rhythm, Language, and 'Harmony' (or Melody), taken singly or combined.

II. The Objects of Imitation.

Higher or lower types are represented in all the Imitative Arts. In Poetry this is the basis of the distinction between Tragedy and Comedy.

III. The Manner of Imitation.

Poetry may be in form either dramatic narrative, pure narrative (including lyric poetry), or pure drama. A digression follows on the name and original home of the Drama.

IV. The Origin and Development of Poetry.

Psychologically, Poetry may be traced to two causes, the instinct of Imitation, and the instinct of 'Harmony' and Rhythm.

Historically viewed, Poetry diverged early in two directions: traces of this twofold tendency are found in the Homeric poems: Tragedy and Comedy exhibit the distinction in a developed form.

The successive steps in the history of Tragedy are enumerated.

V. Definition of the Ludicrous (*τὸ γελοῖον*), and a brief sketch of the rise of Comedy. Points of comparison between Epic Poetry and Tragedy. (The chapter is fragmentary.)

- VI. Definition of Tragedy. Six elements in Tragedy: three external, —namely, Spectacular Presentment (ὁ τῆς θύσεως κόσμος or θῦσις), Lyrical Song (μελοποιία), Diction (λέξις); three internal, —namely, Plot (μῦθος), Character (ἦθος), and Thought (διάνοια). Plot, or the representation of the action, is of primary importance; Character and Thought come next in order.
- VII. The Plot must be a Whole, complete in itself, and of adequate magnitude.
- VIII. The Plot must be a Unity. Unity of Plot consists not in Unity of Hero, but in Unity of Action.  
 The parts must be organically connected.
- IX. (Plot continued.) Dramatic Unity can be attained only by the observance of Poetic as distinct from Historic Truth; for Poetry is an expression of the Universal, History of the Particular. The rule of probable or necessary sequence as applied to the incidents. Certain plots condemned for want of Unity.  
 The best Tragic effects depend on the combination of the Inevitable and the Unexpected.
- X. (Plot continued.) Definitions of Simple (ἄπλοῦ) and Complex (πεπλεγμένοι) Plots.
- XI. (Plot continued.) Reversal of Intention (περιπέτεια), Recognition (ἀναγνώρισις), and Tragic or disastrous Incident (πάθος) defined and explained.
- XII. The 'quantitative parts' (μέρη κατὰ τὸ ποσόν) of Tragedy defined:—Prologue, Episode, etc. (Probably an interpolation.)
- XIII. (Plot continued.) What constitutes Tragic Action. The change of fortune and the character of the hero as requisite to an ideal Tragedy. The unhappy ending more truly tragic than the 'poetic justice' which is in favour with a popular audience, and belongs rather to Comedy.
- XIV. (Plot continued.) The tragic emotions of pity and fear should spring out of the Plot itself. To produce them by Scenery or Spectacular effect is entirely against the spirit of Tragedy. Examples of Tragic Incidents designed to heighten the emotional effect.
- XV. The element of Character (as the manifestation of moral purpose) in Tragedy. Requisites of ethical portraiture. The rule of necessity or probability applicable to Character as to Plot. The 'Deus ex Machina' (a passage out of place here). How Character is idealised.
- XVI. (Plot continued.) Recognition: its various kinds, with examples.
- XVII. Practical rules for the Tragic Poet:  
 (1) To place the scene before his eyes, and to act the

parts himself in order to enter into vivid sympathy with the *dramatis personae*.

(2) To sketch the bare outline of the action before proceeding to fill in the episodes.

The Episodes of Tragedy are here incidentally contrasted with those of Epic Poetry.

**XVIII. Further rules for the Tragic Poet :**

(1) To be careful about the Complication (*déris*) and *Dénouement* (*λίσσις*) of the Plot, especially the *Dénouement*.

(2) To unite, if possible, varied forms of poetic excellence.

(3) Not to overcharge a Tragedy with details appropriate to Epic Poetry.

(4) To make the Choral Odes—like the Dialogue—an organic part of the whole.

**XIX. Thought** (*διάνοια*), or the Intellectual element, and Diction in Tragedy.

Thought is revealed in the dramatic speeches composed according to the rules of Rhetoric.

Diction falls largely within the domain of the Art of Delivery, rather than of Poetry.

**XX. Diction, or Language in general.** An analysis of the parts of speech, and other grammatical details. (Probably interpolated.)

**XXI. Poetic Diction.** The words and modes of speech admissible in Poetry : including *Metaphor*, in particular.

A passage—probably interpolated—on the Gender of Nouns.

**XXII. (Poetic Diction continued.)** How Poetry combines elevation of language with perspicuity.

**XXIII. Epic Poetry.** It agrees with Tragedy in Unity of Action : herein contrasted with History.

**XXIV. (Epic Poetry continued.)** Further points of agreement with Tragedy. The points of difference are enumerated and illustrated,—namely, (1) the length of the poem ; (2) the metre ; (3) the art of imparting a plausible air to incredible fiction.

**XXV. Critical Objections brought against Poetry, and the principles on which they are to be answered.** In particular, an elucidation of the meaning of Poetic Truth, and its difference from common reality.

**XXVI. A general estimate of the comparative worth of Epic Poetry and Tragedy.** The alleged defects of Tragedy are not essential to it. Its positive merits entitle it to the higher rank of the two.

## ABBREVIATIONS IN THE CRITICAL NOTES

- A<sup>c</sup> = the Parisian manuscript (1741) of the 11th century: generally, but perhaps too confidently, supposed to be the archetype from which all other extant MSS. directly or indirectly are derived.
- apogr. = one or more of the MSS. other than A<sup>c</sup>.
- Arabs = the Arabic version of the *Poetics* (Paris 882 A), of the middle of the 10th century, a version independent of our extant MSS. It is not directly taken from the Greek, but is a translation of a Syriac version of the *Poetics* by an unknown author, now lost. (The quotations in the critical notes are from the literal Latin translation of the Arabic, as given in Margoliouth's *Analecta Orientalia*.)
- Σ = the Greek manuscript, far older than A<sup>c</sup> and no longer extant, which was used by the Syriac translator. (This symbol already employed by Susemihl I have taken for the sake of brevity.) It must be remembered, therefore, that the readings ascribed to Σ are those which we *infer* to have existed in the Greek exemplar, from which the Syriac translation was made.
- Ald. = the Aldine edition of *Rhetores Graeci*, published in 1508.
- Vahlen = Vahlen's text of the *Poetics* Ed. 3.
- Vahlen con. = a conjecture of Vahlen, not admitted by him into the text.
- [ ] = words with manuscript authority (including A<sup>c</sup>), which should be deleted from the text.
- < > = a conjectural supplement to the text.
- \* \* = a lacuna in the text.
- † = words which are corrupt and have not been satisfactorily restored.

**ΑΡΙΣΤΟΤΕΛΟΥΣ  
ΠΕΡΙ ΠΟΙΗΤΙΚΗΣ**

## ΑΡΙΣΤΟΤΕΛΟΥΣ ΠΕΡΙ ΠΟΙΗΤΙΚΗΣ

I  
<sup>1447</sup> a Περὶ ποιητικῆς αὐτῆς τε καὶ τῶν εἰδῶν αὐτῆς ἦν τινα  
 δύναμιν ἕκαστον ἔχει, καὶ πῶς δεῖ συνίστασθαι τοὺς μύθους  
 10 εἰ μέλλει καλῶς ἔξειν ἢ ποιήσῃς, ἔτι δὲ ἐκ πόσων καὶ  
 ποίων ἐστὶ μορίων, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὅσα τῆς  
 αὐτῆς ἐστὶ μεθόδου, λέγωμεν ἀρξάμενοι κατὰ φύσιν· πρῶ-  
 20 τον ἀπὸ τῶν πρώτων. ἐποποιία δὲ καὶ ἡ τῆς τραγῳδίας 2  
 ποιήσῃς ἔτι δὲ κωμῳδία καὶ ἡ διθυραμβοποιητικὴ καὶ τῆς  
 15 αὐλητικῆς ἢ πλείστη καὶ κιθαριστικῆς πᾶσαι τυγχάνουσιν  
 οὖσαι μιμήσεις τὸ σύνολον, διαφέρουσι δὲ ἀλλήλων τρισίν, 3  
 ἢ γὰρ τῷ ἐν ἑτέροις μιμῆσθαι ἢ τῷ ἕτερα ἢ τῷ ἐτέ-  
 ρως καὶ μὴ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον. ὥσπερ γὰρ καὶ χρώμασι 4  
 καὶ σχήμασι πολλὰ μιμούνταί τινες ἀπεικάζοντες (οἱ μὲν  
 20 διὰ τέχνης οἱ δὲ διὰ συνηθείας), ἕτεροι δὲ διὰ τῆς φωνῆς,  
 οὕτω κἀν ταῖς εἰρημέναις τέχναις· ἅπασαι μὲν ποιοῦνται  
 τὴν μίμησιν ἐν ῥυθμῷ καὶ λόγῳ καὶ ἁρμονίᾳ, τούτοις δ'  
 ἢ χωρὶς ἢ μεμιγμένοις· οἷον ἁρμονία μὲν καὶ ῥυθμῷ χρώ-

12. λέγωμεν apogr.: λέγομεν A<sup>c</sup>: (habuit iam Σ var. lect., 'et dicamus et  
 dicimus' Arabs) 17. ἐν Forchhammer ('imitatur rebus diversis'  
 Arabs): γένει A<sup>c</sup> 20. τῆς φωνῆς codd. ('per sonos' Arabs): τῆς φύσεως  
 Maggi: αὐτῆς τῆς φύσεως Spengel 21. κἀν Parisinus 2088: καὶ ἐν  
 apogr. alia: καὶ A<sup>c</sup>

## ARISTOTLE'S POETICS

I I propose to treat of Poetry in itself and of its various  
1447 a kinds, noting the essential quality of each; to inquire  
into the structure of the plot as requisite to a good poem;  
into the number and nature of the parts of which a  
poem is composed; and similarly into whatever else falls  
within the same inquiry. Following, then, the order of  
nature, let us begin with the principles which come  
first.

Epic poetry and Tragedy, Comedy also and Dithyrambic  
poetry, and the music of the flute and of the lyre in  
most of their forms, are all in their general conception  
→ modes of imitation. (They differ, however, from one  
another in three respects,—the medium, the objects, the  
manner or mode of imitation, being in each case  
distinct.)

For as there are persons who, by conscious art or  
mere habit, imitate and represent various objects through  
the medium of colour and form, or again by the voice;  
so in the arts above mentioned, taken as a whole, the  
imitation is produced by rhythm, language, or 'harmony,'  
either singly or combined.



μεναι μόνον ἢ τε αὐλητικὴ καὶ ἢ κιθαριστικὴ κὰν εἴ τινες  
 25 ἕτεραι τυγχάνουσιν οὐσαι τοιαῦται τὴν δύναμιν, οἷον ἢ τῶν  
 συρίγγων· αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ ῥυθμῷ [μιμοῦνται] χωρὶς ἀρμονίας 5  
 ἢ τῶν ὀρχηστῶν, καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι διὰ τῶν σχηματιζομένων  
 ῥυθμῶν μιμοῦνται καὶ ἦθη καὶ πάθη καὶ πράξεις· ἢ δὲ 6  
 [ἐποποιία] μόνον τοῖς λόγοις ψιλοῖς ἢ τοῖς μέτροις καὶ τού-  
 1447 b τοις εἴτε μιγνύσα μετ' ἀλλήλων εἶθ' ἐνί τινι γένει χρωμένη  
 τῶν μέτρων, <ἀνώνυμος> τυγχάνει οὐσα μέχρι τοῦ νῦν· οὐδὲν 7  
 10 γὰρ ἂν ἔχοιμεν ὀνομάσαι κοινὸν τοὺς Σώφρονος καὶ Ξενάρχου  
 μίμους καὶ τοὺς Σωκρατικούς λόγους; οὐδὲ εἴ τις διὰ τριμέ-  
 τρων ἢ ἐλεγείων ἢ τῶν ἄλλων τιῶν τῶν τοιούτων ποιοῖτο τὴν  
 μίμησιν· πλὴν οἱ ἄνθρωποι γε συνάπτοντες τῷ μέτρῳ τὸ  
 ποιεῖν ἐλεγειοποιούς, τοὺς δὲ ἐποποιούς ὀνομάζουσιν, οὐχ ὡς  
 15 κατὰ τὴν μίμησιν ποιητὰς ἀλλὰ κοινῇ κατὰ τὸ μέτρον προσ-  
 αγορεύοντες. καὶ γὰρ ἂν ἱατρικὸν ἢ φυσικὸν τι διὰ τῶν 8  
 μέτρων ἐκφέρωσιν, οὕτω καλεῖν εἰώθασιν· οὐδὲν δὲ κοινὸν  
 ἐστὶν Ὀμήρῳ καὶ Ἐμπεδοκλεῖ πλὴν τὸ μέτρον· διὸ τὸν μὲν  
 ποιητὴν δίκαιον καλεῖν, τὸν δὲ φυσιολόγον μᾶλλον ἢ ποιη-  
 20 τήν. ὁμοίως δὲ κὰν εἴ τις ἅπαντα τὰ μέτρα μιγνύων 9  
 ποιοῖτο τὴν μίμησιν καθάπερ Χαιρήμων ἐποίησε Κένταυ-  
 ρον μικτὴν ῥαψῳδίαν ἐξ ἀπάντων τῶν μέτρων, καὶ τοῦτον

25. τυγχάνουσιν apogr.: τυγχάνωσιν A<sup>c</sup> τοιαῦται add. apogr. ('aliae artes similes vi' Arabs): om. A<sup>c</sup> 26. τῷ αὐτῷ δὲ Σ male (Margoliouth) μιμοῦνται del. Spengel (confirm. Arabs) 27. ἢ apogr. ('ars instrumenti saltationis' Arabs): ol A<sup>c</sup>: ol <χαριέστεροι> Gomperz: ol <χαριέστες> Zeller ὀρχηστῶν Σ male (Margoliouth) 29. ἐποποιία secl. Ueberweg: om. Σ ψιλοῖς ἢ τοῖς] ἢ τοῖς ψιλοῖς sive ἢ ψιλοῖς τοῖς conl. Vahlen 1447 b 9. ἀνώνυμος add. Bernays (confirmante Arabe 'quae sine nomine est adhuc') τυγχάνει οὐσα Suckow: τυγχάνουσα A<sup>c</sup> 15. κατὰ τὴν Guelferbytanus: τὴν κατὰ A<sup>c</sup> κοινῇ A<sup>c</sup> 16. φυσικὸν Heinsius ('re physica' Arabs: confirm. Averroes): μουσικὸν codd. 22. μικτὴν om. Σ μικτὴν ῥαψῳδίαν del. Tyrwhitt καὶ τοῦτον apogr.: καὶ A<sup>c</sup> (om. Σ): καίτοι Rasso: οὐκ ἦδη καὶ Ald. verba 20—22 ὁμοίως δὲ . . . τῶν μέτρων post 12 τοιούτων transtulit Susemihl, commate post τοιούτων posito, deletis 12 ποιοῖτο τὴν μίμησιν et 22 καὶ ποιητὴν: sic efficitur ut

Thus in the music of the flute and of the lyre, 'harmony' and rhythm alone are employed; also in other arts, such as that of the shepherd's pipe, which are essentially similar to these. In dancing, rhythm 5 alone is used without 'harmony'; for even dancing imitates character, emotion, and action, by rhythmical movement.

There is another art which imitates by means of 6 language alone, and that either in prose or verse—which 1447 b verse, again, may either combine different metres or consist of but one kind—but this has hitherto been without a name. For there is no common term we could apply to 7 the mimes of Sophron and Xenarchus and the Socratic dialogues on the one hand; and, on the other, to poetic imitations in iambic, elegiac, or any similar metre. People do, indeed, add the word 'maker' or 'poet' to the name of the metre, and speak of elegiac 8 poets, or epic (that is, hexameter) poets, as if it were not the imitation that makes the poet, but the verse that entitles them all indiscriminately to the name. Even 8 when a treatise on medicine or natural science is brought out in verse, the name of poet is by custom given to the author; and yet Homer and Empedocles have nothing in common but the metre, so that it would be right to call the one poet, the other physicist rather than poet. On the same principle, even if a writer in his poetic 9 imitation were to combine all metres, as Chaereon did in his Centaur, which is a medley composed of metres

ποιητὴν προσαγορευτέον. περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων διωρίσθω  
 τούτων τὸν τρόπον· εἰσὶ δὲ τινες αἱ πᾶσι χρῶνται τοῖς εἰρη- 10  
 25 μένοις, λέγω δὲ οἶον ῥυθμῶ καὶ μέλει καὶ μέτρῳ, ὥσπερ  
 ἢ τε τῶν διθυραμβικῶν ποιήσεις καὶ ἢ τῶν νόμων καὶ ἢ  
 τε τραγωδία καὶ ἢ κωμωδία· διαφέρουσι δὲ ὅτι αἱ μὲν  
 ἅμα πᾶσιν αἱ δὲ κατὰ μέρος. ταύτας μὲν οὖν λέγω τὰς  
 διαφορὰς τῶν τεχνῶν, ἐν οἷς ποιοῦνται τὴν μίμησιν.

II  
 1448 a Ἐπεὶ δὲ μιμοῦνται οἱ μιμούμενοι πράττοντας, ἀνάγκη δὲ  
 τούτους ἢ σπουδαίους ἢ φαύλους εἶναι (τὰ γὰρ ἦθη σχεδὸν  
 αἰεὶ τούτοις ἀκολουθεῖ μόνους, κακία γὰρ καὶ ἀρετὴ τὰ ἦθη  
 διαφέρουσι πάντες), ἦτοι βελτίονας ἢ καθ' ἡμᾶς ἢ χείρονας  
 5 ἢ καὶ τοιούτους, ὥσπερ οἱ γραφεῖς· Πολύγνωτος μὲν γὰρ  
 κρείττους, Παύσων δὲ χείρους, Διονύσιος δὲ ὁμοίους εἰκαζεν·  
 δῆλον δὲ ὅτι καὶ τῶν λεχθεισῶν ἐκάστη μίμησεων ἔξει 2  
 ταύτας τὰς διαφορὰς καὶ ἔσται ἕτερα τῷ ἕτερα μιμῆσθαι  
 τούτων τὸν τρόπον. καὶ γὰρ ἐν ὀρχήσει καὶ αὐλήσει καὶ 3  
 10 κιθαρίσει ἔστι γενέσθαι ταύτας τὰς ἀνομοιότητας· καὶ [τὸ]  
 περὶ τοὺς λόγους δὲ καὶ τὴν ψιλομετρίαν, οἶον Ὀμηρος  
 μὲν βελτίους, Κλεοφῶν δὲ ὁμοίους, Ἡγήμων δὲ ὁ Θάσιος ὁ  
 τὰς παρῳδίας ποιήσας πρῶτος καὶ Νικοχάρης ὁ τὴν Δειλι-  
 15 ἄδα χείρους· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τοὺς διθυράμβους καὶ περὶ 4  
 τοὺς νόμους, ὥσπερ †γᾶς† Κύκλωπας Τιμόθεος καὶ Φιλό-

verbis φυσιολόγον μάλλον ἢ ποιητὴν προσαγορευτέον concludatur locus Σ  
 24. at Ald. 1536: ai Riccardianus 16: oi A<sup>c</sup> 26. διθυράμβων apogr.  
 28. πᾶσαι apogr. οὖν apogr.: οὐ A<sup>c</sup> 29. οἷς Vettori: αἷς codd.  
 1448 a 3. κακία . . . ἀρετὴ apogr. Σ: κακία . . . ἀρετὴ A<sup>c</sup> 7. δὴ Morel  
 8. τῷ apogr.: τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 10. τὸ om. Ald.: secl. Susemihl: τῷ Bywater  
 12. ὁ ante τὰς add. apogr. 13. τραγωδίας ut videtur Σ ('qui primus  
 faciebat tragoediam' Arabs) Δειλιάδα A<sup>c</sup> pr. m. (recte, ut in Iliadis  
 parodia, Tyrrell: cf. Castelvetro): Δηλιάδα apogr. A<sup>c</sup> corr. (η supr. et m. rec.)  
 15. ὥσπερ γᾶς codd.: ὥσπερ <Ἀργᾶς> Castelvetro: ὡς Πέρσας <καὶ>  
 F. Medici: ὥσπερ γὰρ con. Vahlen: ὥσπερ οὕτως fort. Σ ('sicut imitatur  
 quis, sic Cyclopus etc.' Arabs): ὥσπερ οἱ τοὺς con. Margoliouth  
 Κύκλωπας] κυκλωπᾶς A<sup>c</sup>

of all kinds, we should bring him too under the general term poet. So much then for these distinctions.

(There are, again, some arts which employ all the 10 means above mentioned,—namely, rhythm, tune and metre.) Such are Dithyrambic and Nomic poetry, and — also Tragedy and Comedy; but between them the difference is, that in the first two cases these means are all employed in combination, in the latter, now one means is employed, now another.

Such, then, are the differences of the arts with respect to the medium of imitation.

II  
1448

Since the objects of imitation are men in action, and these men must be either of a higher or a lower type (for moral character mainly answers to these divisions, goodness and badness being the distinguishing marks of moral differences), it follows that we must represent men either as better than in real life, or as worse, or as they are. It is the same in painting. Polygnotus depicted men as nobler than they are, Pauson as less noble, Dionysius drew them true to life.

Now it is evident that each of the modes of imitation 2 above mentioned will exhibit these differences, and become a distinct kind in imitating objects that are thus distinct. Such diversities may be found even in dancing, 3 flute-playing, and lyre-playing. So again in language, whether prose or verse unaccompanied by music. Homer, for example, makes men better than they are; Cleophon as they are; Hegemon the Thasian, the inventor of parodies, and Nicochares, the author of the Deiliad, worse than they are. The same thing holds good of Dithyrambs 4 and Nomes; here too one may portray different types, as

MEDIUM/SM

1—MIA

7.000

3

7

ξενος· [μμήσαιτο ἄν τις·] ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ δὲ διαφορᾷ καὶ ἡ τραγωδία πρὸς τὴν κωμωδίαν διέστηκεν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ χείρους ἢ δὲ βελτίους μμείσθαι βούλεται τῶν νῦν.

III Ἔτι δὲ τούτων τρίτη διαφορὰ τὸ ὡς ἕκαστα τούτων μμη-  
 20 σαιτο ἄν τις. καὶ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς καὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μι-  
 μείσθαι ἔστιν ὅτε μὲν ἀπαγγέλλοντα (ἢ ἕτερόν τι γιγνό-  
 μενον, ὡσπερ Ὀμηρος ποιεῖ, ἢ ὡς τὸν αὐτὸν καὶ μὴ μετα-  
 βάλλοντα), ἢ πάντας ὡς πράττοντας καὶ ἐνεργούντας [τοὺς  
 μιμουμένους]. ἐν τρισὶ δὲ ταύταις διαφοραῖς ἡ μίμησις ἔστιν, 2  
 25 ὡς εἶπομεν κατ' ἀρχάς, ἐν οἷς τε καὶ ἂ καὶ ὡς. ὥστε τῇ  
 μὲν ὁ αὐτὸς ἂν εἴη μμητής Ὀμήρω Σοφοκλῆς, μιμοῦνται  
 γὰρ ἄμφω σπουδαίους, τῇ δὲ Ἀριστοφάνει, πράττοντας γὰρ  
μιμοῦνται καὶ δρῶντας ἄμφω. ὅθεν καὶ δράματα καλεῖ- 8  
 σθαί τινες αὐτὰ φασιν, ὅτι μιμοῦνται. δρῶντας. διὸ καὶ  
 30 ἀντιποιοῦνται τῆς τε τραγωδίας καὶ τῆς κωμωδίας οἱ Δω-  
 ριεῖς (τῆς μὲν γὰρ κωμωδίας οἱ Μεγαρεῖς οἳ τε ἐνταῦθα  
 ὡς ἐπὶ τῆς παρ' αὐτοῖς δημοκρατίας γενομένης, καὶ οἱ ἐκ  
 Σικελίας, ἐκείθεν γὰρ ἦν Ἐπίχαρμος ὁ ποιητής πολλῶ  
 πρότερος ὢν Χιωνίδου καὶ Μάγνητος· καὶ τῆς τραγωδίας  
 35 ἔνιοι τῶν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ) ποιούμενοι τὰ ὀνόματα σημείον·  
 αὐτοὶ μὲν γὰρ κώμας τὰς περιοικίδας καλεῖν φασιν, Ἀθη-  
 ναίους δὲ δήμους, ὡς κωμφοδὸς οὐκ ἀπὸ τοῦ κωμάζειν λε-

16. [μμήσαιτο ἄν τις] secludendum coni. Vahlen τῇ αὐτῇ δὲ Vettori ('in eadem discrepantia' Arabs): ταύτη δὲ τῇ M. Casaubon: αὐτῇ δὲ τῇ codd.  
 18. τῶν νῦν om. ut videtur Σ 21. ὅτε μὲν . . . γιγνόμενον] <ἢ> ὅτε μὲν ἀπαγγέλλοντα <ὅτε δ'> ἕτερόν τι γιγνόμενον Zeller, recte, ut opinor: eodem fere pervenit Arabem secutus Margoliouth τι secl. Zeller, Spengel  
 22. τὸν secl. Bywater 23. πάντας] πάντα I. Casaubon τοὺς μιμου-  
 μένους secl. (olim secl. Vahlen): tuetur Σ: [τοὺς] μιμουμένον Friedrichs, Schmidt 25. καὶ ἂ καὶ ὡς] ἀναγκαιῶς ut videtur Σ καὶ ἂ om. A<sup>c</sup>:  
 add. apogr. (confirm. Arabs) 32. δημοκρατείας A<sup>c</sup> 34. Χιωνίδου  
 Robortello (confirm. Arabs): χωνίδου A<sup>c</sup> 35. fort. <δ'> ἔνιοι Bywater  
 36. αὐτοὶ Spengel: οἱτο codd. Ἀθηναίους edit. Oxon. 1760 et Spengel:  
 ἀθηναῖοι codd. (cf. 1460 b 35), tuetur Wilamowitz

Timotheus and Philoxenus differed in representing their Cyclopes. The same distinction marks off Tragedy from Comedy; for Comedy aims at representing men as worse, Tragedy as better than in actual life.

III There is still a third difference—the manner in which each of these objects may be imitated. For the medium being the same, and the objects the same, the poet may imitate by narration—in which case he can either take another personality as Homer does, or speak in his own person, unchanged—or he may present all his characters as living and moving before us.

(These, then, as we said at the beginning, are the 2 three differences which distinguish artistic imitation,—the medium, the objects, and the manner.) So that from one point of view, Sophocles is an imitator of the same kind as Homer—for both imitate higher types of character; from another point of view, of the same kind as Aristophanes—for both imitate persons acting and doing. Hence, some say, the name of 'drama' is given 3 to such poems, as representing action. For the same reason the Dorians claim the invention both of Tragedy and Comedy. The claim to Comedy is put forward by the Megarians,—not only by those of Greece proper, who allege that it originated under their democracy, but also by the Megarians of Sicily, for the poet Epicharmus, who is much earlier than Chionides and Magnes, belonged to that country. Tragedy too is claimed by certain Dorians of the Peloponnese. In each case they appeal to the evidence of language. Villages, they say, are by them called *κῶμαι*, by the Athenians *δῆμοι*: and they assume that Comedians were so named not from *κωμάζειν*, 'to

χθέντας ἀλλὰ τῇ κατὰ κώμας πλάνῃ ἀτιμαζομένους ἐκ τοῦ  
 1448 b ἄστεως. καὶ τὸ ποιεῖν αὐτοὶ μὲν δρᾶν, Ἀθηναίους δὲ  
 πράττειν προσαγορεύειν. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν διαφορῶν 4  
 καὶ πόσαι καὶ τίνες τῆς μιμήσεως εἰρήσθω ταῦτα.

IV Ἐοίκασι δὲ γεννηῆσαι μὲν ὅλως τὴν ποιητικὴν αἰτίαι δύο  
 5 τινὲς καὶ αὗται φυσικαί. τό τε γὰρ μιμείσθαι σύμφυτον 2  
 τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐκ παίδων ἐστί, καὶ τούτῳ διαφέρουσι  
 τῶν ἄλλων ζῴων ὅτι μιμητικώτατόν ἐστι καὶ τὰς μαθή-  
 σεις ποιεῖται διὰ μιμήσεως τὰς πρώτας, καὶ τὸ χαίρειν  
 τοῖς μιμήμασι πάντας. σημεῖον δὲ τούτου τὸ συμβαῖνον 3  
 10 ἐπὶ τῶν ἔργων· ἃ γὰρ αὐτὰ λυπηρῶς ὀρώμεν, τούτων τὰς  
 εἰκόνας τὰς μάλιστα ἠκριβωμένας χαίρομεν θεωροῦντες, οἷον  
 θηρίων τε μορφᾶς τῶν ἀτιμοτάτων καὶ νεκρῶν. αἴτιον δὲ 4  
 καὶ τούτου, ὅτι μαυθάνειν οὐ μόνον τοῖς φιλοσόφοις ἤδιστον  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὁμοίως, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ βραχὺ κοινωνοῦ-  
 15 σιν αὐτοῦ. διὰ γὰρ τοῦτο χαίρουσι τὰς εἰκόνας ὀρώντες, ὅτι 5  
 συμβαίνει θεωροῦντας μαυθάνειν καὶ συλλογίζεσθαι τί ἕκα-  
 στον, οἷον ὅτι οὗτος ἐκεῖνος· ἐπεὶ ἐὰν μὴ τύχῃ προεωρακῶς,  
 οὐχ ἢ μίμημα ποιήσει τὴν ἡδονὴν ἀλλὰ διὰ τὴν ἀπερ-  
 γασίαν ἢ τὴν χροιάν ἢ διὰ τοιαύτην τιὰ ἄλλην αἰτίαν.  
 20 κατὰ φύσιν δὴ ὄντος ἡμῖν τοῦ μιμείσθαι καὶ τῆς ἁρμονίας 6  
 καὶ τοῦ ῥυθμοῦ (τὰ γὰρ μέτρα ὅτι μόρια τῶν ῥυθμῶν ἐστί  
 φανερόν) ἐξ ἀρχῆς πεφυκότες καὶ αὐτὰ μάλιστα κατὰ  
 μικρὸν προάγοντες ἐγέννησαν τὴν ποίησιν ἐκ τῶν αὐτοσχε-

1448 b 1. καὶ τὸ ποιεῖν . . . προσαγορεύειν om. Arabs 4. ὅλως om.  
 Arabs 5. αὗται Ald.: αὐταὶ A<sup>c</sup> 13. καὶ τούτου apogr. (confirm.  
 Arabs): καὶ τούτου A<sup>c</sup>: [καὶ τούτου] Zeller: καὶ [τούτου] Spengel: καὶ <λόγος>  
 τούτου Bonitz 18. οὐχ ἢ Hermann, et Σ, ut videtur: οὐχι codd.  
 τὴν ἡδονὴν om. Arabs 20. δὴ conl. Vahlen: δὲ codd. 22. καὶ αὐτὰ]  
 πρὸς αὐτὰ Ald.: <eis> αὐτὰ καὶ Gomperz: καὶ αὐτὰ post μάλιστα traiciendum  
 esse conl. Susemihl

revel,' but because they wandered from village to village (κατὰ κώμας), being excluded contemptuously from the city. They add also that the Dorian word for 'doing' is δρᾶν, and the Athenian, πράττειν.

This may suffice as to the number and nature of the various modes of imitation.

IV Poetry in general seems to have sprung from two causes, each of them lying deep in our nature. First, the instinct of imitation is implanted in man from childhood, one difference between him and other animals being that he is the most imitative of living creatures; and through imitation he learns his earliest lessons; and no less universal is the pleasure felt in things imitated. We have evidence of this in the facts of experience. Objects which in themselves we <sup>fairly would</sup> view with pain, we delight to contemplate when reproduced with minute fidelity: such as the forms of the most ignoble animals and of dead bodies. The cause of this again is, that to learn gives the liveliest pleasure, not only to philosophers but to men in general; whose capacity, however, of learning is more limited. Thus the reason why men enjoy seeing a likeness is, that in contemplating it they find themselves learning or inferring, and saying perhaps, 'Ah, that is he.' For if you happen not to have seen the original, the pleasure will be due not to the imitation as such, but to the execution, the colouring, or some such other cause.

Imitation, then, is one instinct of our nature. Next, there is the instinct for 'harmony' and rhythm, metres being manifestly sections of rhythm. Persons, therefore, starting with this natural gift developed by degrees their



διασμάτων. διεσπάσθη δὲ κατὰ τὰ ρικεῖα ἦθη ἢ ποιήσις· 7  
 25 οἱ μὲν γὰρ σεμνότεροι τὰς καλὰς ἐμμοῦντο πράξεις καὶ  
 τὰς τῶν τοιούτων, οἱ δὲ εὐτελέστεροι τὰς τῶν φαύλων,  
 πρῶτον ψόγους ποιοῦντες, ὥσπερ ἄτεροι ὕμνους καὶ ἐγκώμια.  
 τῶν μὲν οὖν πρὸς Ὀμήρου οὐδενὸς ἔχομεν εἰπεῖν τοιοῦτον 8  
 ποίημα, εἰκὸς δὲ εἶναι πολλούς, ἀπὸ δὲ Ὀμήρου ἀρξαμένοις  
 30 ἔστιν, ὅσον ἐκείνου ὁ Μαργίτης καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα. ἐν οἷς καὶ  
 τὸ ἀρμόττον [ἰαμβεῖον] ἦλθε μέτρον, διὸ καὶ ἰαμβεῖον κα-  
 λεῖται νῦν, ὅτι ἐν τῷ μέτρῳ τούτῳ ἰαμβίζον ἀλλήλους. καὶ 9  
 ἐγένοντο τῶν παλαιῶν οἱ μὲν ἠρωικῶν οἱ δὲ ἰάμβων ποιη-  
 ταί. ὥσπερ δὲ καὶ τὰ σπουδαῖα μάλιστα ποιητῆς Ὀμηρος  
 35 ἦν (μόνος γὰρ οὐχ ὅτι εὐ ἀλλ<α> [ὅτι] καὶ μιμήσεις δραμα-  
 τικὰς ἐποίησεν), οὕτως καὶ τὰ τῆς κωμωδίας σχήματα  
 πρῶτος ὑπέδειξεν, οὐ ψόγον ἀλλὰ τὸ γελοῖον δραματο-  
 ποιήσας· ὁ γὰρ Μαργίτης ἀνάλογον ἔχει, ὥσπερ Ἰλιάς  
 1449 a καὶ ἡ Ὀδύσεια πρὸς τὰς τραγωδίας, οὕτω καὶ οὗτος πρὸς  
 τὰς κωμωδίας. παραφανείσης δὲ τῆς τραγωδίας καὶ κω- 10  
 μωδίας οἱ ἐφ' ἑκατέραν τὴν ποίησιν ὀρμῶντες κατὰ τὴν  
 οἰκείαν φύσιν οἱ μὲν ἀντὶ τῶν ἰάμβων κωμωδοποιοὶ ἐγέν-  
 5 νοντο, οἱ δὲ ἀντὶ τῶν ἐπῶν τραγωδοδιδάσκαλοι, διὰ τὸ  
 μείζονα καὶ ἐντιμότερα τὰ σχήματα εἶναι ταῦτα ἐκείνων.  
 τὸ μὲν οὖν ἐπισκοπεῖν εἰ ἄρ' ἔχει ἤδη ἡ τραγωδία τοῖς 11

27. ἄτεροι Spengel: ετεροι codd. 30. καὶ (post οἷς) Ald.: κατὰ A<sup>c</sup>  
 31. ἰαμβίον (bis) A<sup>c</sup> ἰαμβεῖον ante ἦλθε secl. Stahr 35. ἀλλὰ Bonitz  
 (confirm. Arabs): ἀλλ' ὅτι codd.: ἀλλ' ἔτι Tucker δραματικὰς A<sup>c</sup> et Σ:  
 δραματικῶς apogr. 38. ὁ apogr.: τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 1449 a 6. μείζονα apogr.:  
 μείζον A<sup>c</sup> 7. εἰ ἄρα ἔχει apogr.: παρέχει A<sup>c</sup>: ἄρ' ἔχει Vahlen

special aptitudes, till their rude improvisations gave birth to Poetry.

Poetry now diverged in two directions, according to 7 the individual character of the writers. The graver spirits imitated noble actions, and the actions of good men. The more trivial sort imitated the actions of meaner persons, at first composing satires, as the former did hymns to the gods and the praises of famous men. A poem of the satirical kind cannot 8 indeed be put down to any author earlier than Homer; though many such writers probably there were. But from Homer onward, instances can be cited,—his own Margites, for example, and other similar compositions. The appropriate metre was also here introduced; hence the measure is still called the iambic or lamponing measure, being that in which people lamponed one another. Thus the older poets were distinguished as 9 writers of heroic or of lamponing verse.

As, in the serious style, Homer is pre-eminent among poets, for he alone combined dramatic form with excellence of imitation, so he too first laid down the main lines of Comedy, by dramatising the ludicrous instead of writing personal satire. His Margites bears 1449 a the same relation to Comedy that the Iliad and Odyssey do to Tragedy. But when Tragedy and Comedy came 10 to light, the two classes of poets still followed their natural bent: the lamponers became writers of Comedy, and the Epic poets were succeeded by Tragedians, since the drama was a larger and higher form of art.

Whether Tragedy has as yet perfected its proper 11

εἶδεσιν ἰκανῶς ἢ οὐ, αὐτό τε καθ' αὐτό †κρίνεται ἢ ναί†  
καὶ πρὸς τὰ θέατρα, ἄλλος λόγος. γενομένη <δ'> οὖν ἀπ' ἀρχῆς 12  
10 αὐτοσχεδιαστική, καὶ αὐτὴ καὶ ἡ κωμῳδία, καὶ ἡ μὲν ἀπὸ  
τῶν ἐξαρχόντων τὸν διθύραμβον, ἡ δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τὰ φαλ-  
λικὰ ἃ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐν πολλαῖς τῶν πόλεων διαμένει νο-  
μιζόμενα, κατὰ μικρὸν ἠϋξήθη προαγόντων ὅσον ἐγένετο  
φανερὸν αὐτῆς, καὶ πολλὰς μεταβολὰς μεταβαλοῦσα ἡ  
15 τραγωδία ἐπαύσατο, ἐπεὶ ἔσχε τὴν αὐτῆς φύσιν. καὶ τό 13  
τε τῶν ὑποκριτῶν πλῆθος ἐξ ἑνὸς εἰς δύο πρῶτος Αἰσχύ-  
λος ἤγαγε καὶ τὰ τοῦ χοροῦ ἠλάττωσε καὶ τὸν λόγον  
πρωταγωνιστὴν παρεσκεύασεν, τρεῖς δὲ καὶ σκηνογραφίαν  
Σοφοκλῆς. ἔτι δὲ τὸ μέγεθος ἐκ μικρῶν μύθων καὶ λέ- 14  
20 ξεως γελοίας διὰ τὸ ἐκ σατυρικοῦ μεταβαλεῖν ὄψις ἀπε-  
σεμνύθη. τό τε μέτρον ἐκ τετραμέτρου ἰαμβεῖον ἐγένετο·  
τὸ μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον τετραμέτρῳ ἐχρῶντο διὰ τὸ σατυρικὴν  
καὶ ὀρχηστικωτέραν εἶναι τὴν ποιήσιν, λέξεως δὲ γενομένης  
αὐτῆ ἡ φύσις τὸ οἰκεῖον μέτρον εὔρε· μάλιστα γὰρ λεκτι-  
25 κὸν τῶν μέτρων τὸ ἰαμβεῖον ἐστίν· σημεῖον δὲ τούτου·  
πλεῖστα γὰρ ἰαμβεῖα λέγομεν ἐν τῇ διαλέκτῳ τῇ πρὸς  
ἀλλήλους, ἐξάμετρα δὲ ὀλιγάκις καὶ ἐκβαίνοντες τῆς λε-  
κτικῆς ἀρμονίας. ἔτι δὲ ἐπεισοδίων πλήθη καὶ τὰ ἄλλ' 15

8. κρίνεται ἢ ναί· καὶ A<sup>c</sup>: ναί secl. Bursian: κρίνεται εἶναι καὶ apogr.: κρίναι  
καὶ Forchhammer: fort. κρίνεται εἶναι ἢ καί: αὐτῷ τε κατ' αὐτὸ εἶναι  
κρίπττον ἢ πρὸς θέατρα Σ ut videtur (Margoliouth) 9. γενομένη δ' οὖν  
Bekker: γενομένη οὖν apogr.: γενομένης οὖν A<sup>c</sup> 10. αὐτοσχεδιαστική  
apogr.: αὐτοσχεδιαστικῆς A<sup>c</sup> 11. φαλλικά apogr.: φαῦλλικά A<sup>c</sup>: φαυλικά  
vel φαῦλα Σ 12. διαμένει apogr.: διαμένειν A<sup>c</sup> 15. αὐτῆς Bekker:  
ἐαυτῆς apogr.: αὐτῆς A<sup>c</sup> 19. λέξεως] λέξεις Σ ('orationes' Arabs): <ἡ  
λέξις ἐκ> λέξεως Christ. Omissum vocabulum collato Arabe id esse Mar-  
goliouth suspicatur cuius vice Graeculi ὑψηγορία usurpant 20. σατυρικοῦ  
A<sup>c</sup> 21 et 25. ἰαμβιον A<sup>c</sup> 27. ἐξάμετρα] τετράμετρα Winstanley  
eis λεκτικὴν ἀρμονίαν Wecklein (cf. Rhet. iii. 8. 1408 b 32): codicum  
lect. tutatur Arabs verba 25 σημεῖον—28 ἀρμονίας suadente Usener  
secl. Susemihl 28. post πλήθη punctum del. Gomperz ἄλλα ὡς  
apogr.: ἄλλως A<sup>c</sup>: ἄλλα οἷς Hermann

types or not; and whether it is to be judged in itself, or in relation also to the audience,—this raises another question. Be that as it may, Tragedy—as also Comedy 12—was at first mere improvisation. The one originated with the leaders of the Dithyramb, the other with those of the phallic songs, which are still in use in many of our cities. Tragedy advanced by slow degrees; each new element that showed itself was in turn developed. Having passed through many changes, it found its natural form, and there it stopped.

Aeschylus first introduced a second actor; he diminished the importance of the Chorus, and assigned the leading part to the dialogue. (Sophocles raised the number of actors to three, and added scene-painting.) Moreover, 14 it was not till late that the short plot was discarded for one of greater compass, and the grotesque diction of the earlier satyric form for the stately manner of Tragedy. The iambic measure then replaced the trochaic tetrameter, which was originally employed when the poetry was of the satyric order, and had greater affinities with dancing. Once dialogue had come in, Nature herself discovered the appropriate measure. For the iambic is, of all measures, the most colloquial: we see it in the fact that conversational speech runs into iambic form more frequently than into any other kind of verse; rarely into hexameters, and only when we drop the colloquial intonation. The additions to the number of 'episodes' or acts, and the other improvements of which tradition tells, must be taken as already described; for to discuss

—o

[6000

—  
 —  
 —  
 —  
 ↓

Aristo ~ 59  
 coarsely  
 (Ces. P.  
 O. 1172)

ὡς ἕκαστα κοσμηθῆναι λέγεται ἔστω ἡμῖν εἰρημένα· πο-  
30 λὺ γὰρ ἂν ἴσως ἔργον εἴη διεξιέναι καθ' ἕκαστον.

V Ἡ δὲ κωμῳδία ἐστὶν ὡσπερ εἶπομεν μίμησις φαυλοτέρων  
μὲν, οὐ μέντοι κατὰ πᾶσαν κακίαν, ἀλλὰ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ  
ἐστὶ τὸ γελοῖον μόριον. τὸ γὰρ γελοῖον ἐστὶν ἀμάρτη-  
μά τι καὶ αἰσχος ἀνώδυνον καὶ οὐ φθαρτικόν, οἶον εὐ-  
35 θὺς τὸ γελοῖον πρόσωπον αἰσχρὸν τι καὶ διεστραμμένον  
ἄνευ ὀδύνης. αἱ μὲν οὖν τῆς τραγωδίας μεταβάσεις καὶ 2  
δι' ὧν ἐγένοντο οὐ λελήθασιν, ἧ δὲ κωμῳδία διὰ τὸ μὴ  
σπουδάζεσθαι ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἔλαθεν· καὶ γὰρ χορὸν κωμῳδῶν  
1449 b ὄψέ ποτε ὁ ἄρχων ἔδωκεν, ἀλλ' ἔβελονταί ἦσαν. ἤδη δὲ  
σχήματά τινα αὐτῆς ἐχούσης οἱ λεγόμενοι αὐτῆς ποιηταὶ  
μνημονεύονται. τίς δὲ πρόσωπα ἀπέδωκεν ἢ προλόγους ἢ 3  
πλήθη ὑποκριτῶν καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, ἡγνότηαι. τὸ δὲ μύ-  
5 θους ποιεῖν [Ἐπίχαρμος καὶ Φόρμις] τὸ μὲν ἐξ ἀρχῆς  
ἐκ Σικελίας ἦλθε, τῶν δὲ Ἀθήνησιν Κράτης πρῶτος ἦρξεν  
ἀφέμενος τῆς ἰαμβικῆς ιδέας καθόλου ποιεῖν λόγους καὶ  
μύθους. ἧ μὲν οὖν ἐποποιία τῇ τραγωδίᾳ μέχρι μὲν τοῦ μετὰ 4  
μέτρου [μεγάλου] μίμησις εἶναι σπουδαίων ἠκολούθησεν· τῷ  
10 δὲ τὸ μέτρον ἀπλοῦν ἔχειν καὶ ἀπαγγελίαν εἶναι, ταύτη

29. περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων τσαυτὰ add. Ald. ante ἔστω 32. ἀλλ' ἡ τοῦ  
αἰσχροῦ Friedrich : ἀλλὰ <κατὰ τὸ γελοῖον,> τοῦ <δ'> αἰσχροῦ Christ : 'sed  
tantum res ridicula est de genere foedi quae est portio et ridicula' Arabs, i. e.  
ἀλλὰ μόνον τὸ γελοῖον ἐστὶ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ ὃ μόριον ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ γελοῖον Σ, quod ex  
duabus lectionibus conflatum esse censet Susemihl (1) ἀλλὰ μόριον μόνον τὸ  
γελοῖον ἐστὶ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ, (2) ἀλλὰ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ μόριον ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ γελοῖον  
33. γελοῖον (bis) A<sup>c</sup> 1449 b 3. οἱ λεγόμενοι ὀλίγοι μὲν οἱ Castelvetro :  
ὀλίγοι μὲν [οἱ] Usener 4. προλόγους A<sup>c</sup> : πρόλογον Christ : λόγους Her-  
mann 6. Ἐπίχαρμος καὶ Φόρμις secl. Susemihl : <ἐκείθεν γὰρ ἦστην >  
'Ἐπίχαρμος καὶ Φόρμις post ἦλθε Bywater, collato Themistio, Or. xxvii. p. 337 A,  
recte, ut opinor 8. εἰδέας A<sup>c</sup> 9-10. μέχρι μὲν τοῦ μετὰ μέτρου Thurot  
(cf. Arab.) : μέχρι μόνου μέτρου μεγάλου codd. : μέχρι μὲν τοῦ μέτρω <ἐν μήκει >  
μεγάλῳ conl. Susemihl : μέχρι μὲν τοῦ μέτρω Tyrtwhitt : μέχρι μόνου <τοῦ διὰ  
λόγου ἐμ> μέτρου μεγάλου Ueberweg 10. μεγάλου codd. : secl. Bursian :  
μετὰ λόγου Ald. et, ut videtur, Σ τῷ Ald. : τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 11. ταύτη A<sup>c</sup>

them in detail would, doubtless, be a large undertaking.

V Comedy is, as we have said, an imitation of characters of a lower type;—not, however, in the full sense of the word bad, the Ludicrous being merely a subdivision of the ugly. It consists in some defect or ugliness which is not painful or destructive. To take an obvious example, the comic mask is ugly and distorted, but does not imply pain.

The successive changes through which Tragedy passed, and the authors of these changes, are well known, whereas Comedy has had no history, because it was not at first treated seriously. It was late before the Archon granted a comic chorus to a poet; the performers were till then voluntary. Comedy had already taken definite shape when comic poets, distinctively so called, are heard of. Who introduced masks, or prologues, or increased the number of actors,—these and other similar details remain unknown. As for the plot, it came originally from Sicily; but of Athenian writers Crates was the first who, abandoning the 'iambic' or lampooning form, generalised his themes and plots.

—> Epic poetry agrees with Tragedy in so far as it is an imitation in verse of characters of a higher type. They differ, in that Epic poetry admits but one kind of metre, and is narrative in form. They differ, again,

διαφέρουσιν· ἔτι δὲ τῷ μήκει, <ἐπεὶ> ἢ μὲν ὅτι μάλιστα  
 πειράται ὑπὸ μίαν περίοδον ἡλίου εἶναι ἢ μικρὸν ἐξῆλλάττειν,  
 ἢ δὲ ἐποποιία ἀόριστος τῷ χρόνῳ, καὶ τοῦτ' διαφέρει· καίτοι  
 15 τὸ πρῶτον ὁμοίως ἐν ταῖς τραγωδίαις τοῦτο ἐποίουν καὶ ἐν  
 τοῖς ἔπεσιν. μέρη δ' ἐστὶ τὰ μὲν ταῦτά, τὰ δὲ ἴδια τῆς 5  
 τραγωδίας· διόπερ ὅστις περὶ τραγωδίας οἶδε σπουδαίας  
 καὶ φαύλης, οἶδε καὶ περὶ ἔπων· ἃ μὲν γὰρ ἐποποιία  
 ἔχει, ὑπάρχει τῇ τραγωδίᾳ, ἃ δὲ αὐτῇ, οὐ πάντα ἐν τῇ  
 20 ἐποποιίᾳ.

VI Περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς ἐν ἑξαμέτροις μιμητικῆς καὶ περὶ κω-  
 μωδίας ὕστερον ἐροῦμεν, περὶ δὲ τραγωδίας λέγωμεν ἀνα-  
 λαβόντες αὐτῆς ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων τὸν γινόμενον ὄρον τῆς  
 οὐσίας. ἔστιν οὖν τραγωδία μίμησις πράξεως σπουδαίας 2  
 25 καὶ τελείας μέγεθος ἐχούσης, ἡδυσμένῳ λόγῳ χωρὶς ἐκά-  
 στῶ τῶν εἰδῶν ἐν τοῖς μορίοις, δρώντων καὶ οὐ δι' ἀπαγ-  
 γελίας, δι' ἐλέου καὶ φόβου περαίνουσα τὴν τῶν τοιούτων  
 παθημάτων κάθαρσιν. λέγω δὲ ἡδυσμένον μὲν λόγον τὸν 3  
 ἔχοντα ῥυθμὸν καὶ ἀρμονίαν καὶ μέλος, τὸ δὲ χωρὶς τοῖς  
 30 εἶδεσι τὸ διὰ μέτρων ἕνια μόνον περαίνεσθαι καὶ πάλιν ἕτερα  
 διὰ μέλους. ἐπεὶ δὲ πράττοντες ποιοῦνται τὴν μίμησιν, 4  
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἀν εἴη τι μόριον τραγωδίας ὁ  
 τῆς ὄψεως κόσμος, εἶτα μελοποιία καὶ λέξις· ἐν τούτοις γὰρ  
 ποιοῦνται τὴν μίμησιν. λέγω δὲ λέξιν μὲν αὐτὴν τὴν τῶν

12. διαφέρει Hermann (confirm. Arabs) <ἐπεὶ> ἢ μὲν Gomperz : <ἦ>  
 ἢ μὲν conl. Vahlen : <ei> ἢ μὲν Tucker : ἢ μὲν γὰρ apogr. 14. τούτω  
 (? τοῦτο pr. m.) A<sup>c</sup> διαφέρουσιν Christ 16. ἔπεσιν et ἅπασι var. lect.  
 Σ (Diels), 'in omnibus epeis' Arabs ταῦτά apogr. : ταῦτα A<sup>c</sup> 19.  
 αὐτῆ A<sup>c</sup> : αὐτῆ apogr. : αὐτῆ Reiz : ἐν αὐτῇ Richards 21. μὲν add. apogr. :  
 om. A<sup>c</sup> 22. ἀναλαβόντες Bernays : ἀπολαβόντες codd. 25. ἐκάστῳ  
 Tyrwhitt : ἐκάστου codd. 28. παθημάτων corr. apogr., Σ : μαθημάτων  
 A<sup>c</sup> 29. καὶ μέλος] καὶ μέτρον Vettori : secl. Tyrwhitt 30. μόνον]  
 μόρια Σ ('partes' Arabs) 34. αὐτῆν] ταύτην Bywater

11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

in their length: for (Tragedy endeavours, as far as possible, to confine itself to a single revolution) of the sun, or but slightly to exceed this limit; whereas the Epic action has no limits of time. This, then, is a second point of difference; though at first the same freedom was admitted in Tragedy as in Epic poetry. -TIME  
OUT DAY

Of their constituent parts some are common to both, some peculiar to Tragedy. Whoever, therefore, knows what is good or bad Tragedy, knows also about Epic poetry: (for all the elements of an Epic poem are found in Tragedy, but the elements of a Tragedy are not all found in the Epic poem.)

VI Of the poetry which imitates in hexameter verse, and of Comedy, we will speak hereafter. Let us now discuss Tragedy, resuming its formal definition, as resulting from what has been already said. 7

Tragedy, then, is an imitation of an action that is serious, complete, and of a certain magnitude; in language embellished with each kind of artistic ornament, the several kinds being found in separate parts of the play; in the form of action, not of narrative; through pity and fear effecting the proper purgation of these emotions. By 'language embellished,' I mean language into which rhythm, 'harmony,' and song enter. By 'the several kinds in separate parts,' I mean, that some parts are rendered through the medium of verse alone, others again with the aid of song. X

Now as tragic imitation implies persons acting, it necessarily follows, in the first place, that Spectacular equipment will be a part of Tragedy. Next, Song and Diction, for these are the medium of imitation. By 'Diction' 4



35 μέτρων σύνθεσιν, μελοποιίαν δὲ ἢ τὴν δύναμιν φανεράν  
 ἔχει πᾶσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πράξεως ἐστὶ μίμησις, πράττεται δὲ ὅ  
 ὑπὸ τινῶν πραττόντων, οὗς ἀνάγκη ποιούς τινας εἶναι κατὰ  
 τε τὸ ἦθος καὶ τὴν διάνοιαν (διὰ γὰρ τούτων καὶ τὰς  
 1450 a πράξεις εἶναι φαμεν ποιᾶς τινας, πέφυκεν δὲ αἷτια δύο τῶν  
πράξεων εἶναι, διάνοιαν καὶ ἦθος, καὶ κατὰ ταύτας καὶ  
 τυγχάνουσι καὶ ἀποτυγχάνουσι πάντες), ἔστιν δὴ τῆς μὲν ὅ  
 → πράξεως ὁ μῦθος ἢ μίμησις· λέγω γὰρ μῦθον τούτου, τὴν  
 5 σύνθεσιν τῶν πραγμάτων, τὰ δὲ ἦθη, καθ' ἃ ποιούς τινας  
 εἶναι φαμεν τοὺς πράττοντας, διάνοιαν δέ, ἐν ὅσοις λέγον-  
 τες ἀποδεικνύασιν τι ἢ καὶ ἀποφαίνονται γνώμην. ἀνάγκη ἦ  
 οὖν πάσης τραγωδίας μέρη εἶναι ἕξ, καθ' ἃ ποιᾶ τις ἐστὶν  
 ἢ τραγωδία· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶ μῦθος καὶ ἦθη καὶ λέξις καὶ  
 10 διάνοια καὶ ὄψις καὶ μελοποιία. οἷς μὲν γὰρ μιμοῦνται,  
 δύο μέρη ἐστὶν, ὡς δὲ μιμοῦνται, ἓν, ἃ δὲ μιμοῦνται, τρία,  
 καὶ παρὰ ταῦτα οὐδέν. τούτοις μὲν οὖν <πάντες> [οὐκ ὀλίγοι 8  
 αὐτῶν] ὡς εἰπεῖν κέχρηται τοῖς εἶδεσιν· καὶ γὰρ ὄψεις ἔχει πᾶν  
 καὶ ἦθος καὶ μῦθον καὶ λέξιν καὶ μέλος καὶ διάνοιαν ὡσαύ-  
 15 τως. μέγιστον δὲ τούτων ἐστὶν ἢ τῶν πραγμάτων σύστασις· 9

35. μέτρων] ὀνομάτων Hermann, collato 1450 b 15 36. πᾶσιν Maggi:  
 πᾶσαν codd. 38. διὰ δὲ Zeller διὰ γὰρ τούτων . . . πάντες in  
 parenthesi Thurot 1450 a 1. πέφυκεν δὲ apogr.: πέφυκεν A<sup>c</sup> αἷτια  
 codd.: αἷτια Christ 3. δὴ Eucken: δὲ codd. 4. τούτου] τούτο  
 Maggi: secl. Christ (cf. Arab.) 5. καθ' A<sup>c</sup>: καθ' ἃ apogr. 8.  
 καθ' ἃ ποιᾶ apogr.: καθοποιᾶ A<sup>c</sup> 12. οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν ὡς εἰπεῖν codd.:  
 ὀλίγον αὐτῶν <ἅπαντες> ὡς εἰπεῖν conl. Bywater: οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν <ἀλλὰ  
 πάντες> ὡς εἰπεῖν Bursian: οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν om. Σ, sed πάντως (= πάντες)  
 add. (vid. Margoliouth). Secluso igitur tanquam glossemate οὐκ ὀλίγοι  
 αὐτῶν, scripsi <πάντες> ὡς εἰπεῖν: cf. Rhet. i. 1, 1354 a 12, ὀλίγον codd.:  
 οὐδὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν A<sup>c</sup> marg., ubi ὀλίγον glossema esse suspicor, veram lect. οὐδὲν  
 ὡς εἰπεῖν: Dem. or. xxxviii. 6 πάντων τῶν πλείστων ὡς εἰπεῖν, ubi τῶν  
 πλείστων secluserim. Viam monstravit Diels, qui tamen πάντες quoque  
 omisso, τούτοις μὲν οὖν ὡς εἰπεῖν scripsit: οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν <ἀλλ' ἐν πᾶσι  
 πάντες> Gomperz: οὐκ ὀλίγοι αὐτῶν <ἀλλὰ πάντες πᾶσι> Zeller: <πάντες  
 ἐν πᾶσιν αὐτῆς> Susemihl 13. ὄψεις vel ὄψιν apogr.: ὄψις A<sup>c</sup> πᾶν  
 iure suspexerit

I mean the mere <sup>Diction</sup> metrical arrangement of the words: ←  
 as for 'Song,' it is a term whose sense every one under-  
 stands.

(Again, Tragedy is the imitation of an action) and an  
 → action implies personal agents, who necessarily possess  
 certain distinctive qualities both of character and thought;  
 1450 • for it is by these that we qualify actions themselves,  
 and these—thought and character—are the two natural  
 causes from which actions spring, and on actions again  
 all success or failure depends. Hence, the Plot is the  
 imitation of the action:—for by plot I here mean the ←  
 arrangement of the incidents. By Character I mean  
 that in virtue of which we ascribe certain qualities to  
 the agents. Thought is required wherever a statement  
 is proved, or, it may be, a general truth enunciated.  
 Every Tragedy, therefore, must have six parts, which 7  
 parts determine its quality—namely, Plot, Character, — 6  
Diction, Thought, Spectacle, Song. (Two of the parts con-  
 stitute the medium of imitation, one the manner, and three  
 the objects of imitation.) And these complete the list.  
 These elements have been employed, we may say, by the 8  
 poets to a man; in fact, every play contains Spectacular  
 elements as well as 'Character, Plot, Diction, Song, and  
 Thought.

( But most important of all is the structure of the 9

back ?

ἡ γὰρ τραγωδία μίμησις ἐστὶν οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀλλὰ πρά-  
 ξεως καὶ βίου· <ὁ δὲ βίος> ἐν πράξει ἐστὶν καὶ τὸ τέλος  
 πράξις τις ἐστίν, οὐ ποιότης· εἰσὶν δὲ κατὰ μὲν τὰ ἦθη ποιοί 10  
 τινες, κατὰ δὲ τὰς πράξεις εὐδαιμόνες ἢ τούναντίον. οὐκ οὖν  
 20 ὅπως τὰ ἦθη μιμῶσονται πράττουσιν, ἀλλὰ τὰ ἦθη συμ-  
 παραλαμβάνουσιν διὰ τὰς πράξεις· ὥστε τὰ πράγματα καὶ  
 ὁ μῦθος τέλος τῆς τραγωδίας, τὸ δὲ τέλος μέγιστον ἀπάντων.  
 ἔτι ἄνευ μὲν πράξεως οὐκ ἂν γένοιτο τραγωδία, ἄνευ δὲ 11  
 ἡθῶν γένοιτ' ἂν. αἱ γὰρ τῶν νέων τῶν πλείστων ἀήθεις  
 25 τραγωδίαι εἰσὶν καὶ ὅλως ποιηταὶ πολλοὶ τοιοῦτοι, οἶον καὶ  
 τῶν γραφέων Ζεῦξις πρὸς Πολύγνωτον πέπουθεν· ὁ μὲν γὰρ  
 Πολύγνωτος ἀγαθὸς ἠθογράφος, ἡ δὲ Ζεῦξιδος γραφὴ οὐδὲν  
 ἔχει ἠθος. ἔτι ἐάν τις ἐφεξῆς θῆ ῥήσεις ἠθικὰς καὶ λέξει 12  
 καὶ διανοίᾳ εὖ πεποιημένας, οὐ ποιήσει ὃ ἦν τῆς τραγω-  
 30 δίας ἔργον, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ καταδεεστέροις τούτοις  
 κεκρημένη τραγωδία, ἔχουσα δὲ μῦθον καὶ σύστασιν πρα-  
 γμάτων. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις τὰ μέγιστα οἷς ψυχαγωγεῖ ἡ 13  
 τραγωδία, τοῦ μύθου μέρη ἐστίν, αἵ τε περὶ πέτειαι καὶ ἀνα-  
γνωρίσεις. ἔτι σημεῖον ὅτι καὶ οἱ ἐγχειροῦντες ποιεῖν πρό- 14  
 35 τερον δύνανται τῇ λέξει καὶ τοῖς ἡθεσιν ἀκριβοῦν ἢ τὰ  
 πράγματα συνίστασθαι, οἶον καὶ οἱ πρῶτοι ποιηταὶ σχεδὸν  
 ἅπαντες. ἀρχὴ μὲν οὖν καὶ οἶον ψυχῇ ὁ μῦθος τῆς τρα-

16. ἀλλὰ πράξεως καὶ βίου καὶ εὐδαιμονίας καὶ ἡ κακοδαιμονία ἐν πράξει codd.,  
 sed alio spectat Arabs ('sed in operibus et vita. Et <vita> est in opere');  
 unde Margoliouth ἀλλὰ πράξεως καὶ βίου, <ὁ δὲ βίος> ἐν πράξει, quod pro-  
 bant Diels, Zeller, Susemihl. Codicum lectionem ita supplet Vahlen, καὶ  
 εὐδαιμονίας <καὶ κακοδαιμονίας, ἡ δὲ εὐδαιμονία> καὶ ἡ κακοδαιμονία  
 20. πράττουσιν] πράττοντας ποιοῦσιν conl. Vahlen συμπαράλαμβάνουσιν  
 Guelferbytanus pr. m., Spengel: συμπεριλαμβάνουσιν A<sup>c</sup> 26 et 27.  
 Πολύγνωστον et Πολύγνωστος A<sup>c</sup> 28. λέξει καὶ διανοίᾳ Vahlen (confirm.  
 Arabs): λέξεις καὶ διανοίας codd. 29. οὐ add. apogr. ('nequaquam'  
 Arabs): om. A<sup>c</sup>: fort. οὐδαμῶς Margoliouth 30. ἢ apogr.: ἢ A<sup>c</sup> 36.  
 συνίστασθαι codd.: συνιστάναι Thurot

incidents. For Tragedy is an imitation, not of men, but of an action and of life, and life consists in action, and its end is a mode of action, not a quality. Now character determines men's qualities, but it is by their actions that they are happy or the reverse. Dramatic action, therefore, is not with a view to the representation of character: character comes in as subsidiary to the actions. Hence the incidents and the plot are the end of a tragedy; and the end is the chief thing of all. Again, without action there cannot be a tragedy; there may be without character. The tragedies of most of our modern poets fail in the rendering of character; and of poets in general this is often true. It is the same in painting; and here lies the difference between Zeuxis and Polygnotus. Polygnotus delineates character well: the style of Zeuxis is devoid of ethical quality. Again, if you string together a set of speeches expressive of character, and well finished in point of diction and thought, you will not produce the essential tragic effect nearly so well as with a play which, however deficient in these respects, yet has a plot and artistically constructed incidents. (Besides which, the most powerful elements of emotional interest in Tragedy—Peripeteia or <sup>reversal</sup> Reversal of Intention and Recognition scenes—are parts of the plot.) A further proof is, that novices in the art attain to finish of diction and precision of portraiture before they can construct the plot. It is the same with almost all the early poets.

The Plot, then, is the first principle, and, as it were,

γωδίας, δεύτερον δὲ τὰ ἦθη· παραπλήσιον γάρ ἐστιν καὶ 15  
 1450 b ἐπὶ τῆς γραφικῆς· εἰ γὰρ τις ἐναλείψειε τοῖς καλλίστοις  
 (φαρμάκοις) χύδην, οὐκ ἂν ὁμοίως εὐφράνειεν καὶ λευκο-  
 Fny γραφήσας εἰκόνα· ἔστιν τε μίμησις πρᾶξεως καὶ διὰ ταύτην  
 μάλιστα τῶν πραττόντων. τρίτον δὲ ἡ διάνοια· τοῦτο δέ 16  
 5 ἔστιν τὸ λέγειν δύνασθαι τὰ ἐνόητα καὶ τὰ ἀρμόττοντα,  
 ὅπερ ἐπὶ τῶν λόγων τῆς πολιτικῆς καὶ ῥητορικῆς ἔργον  
 ἐστίν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀρχαῖοι πολιτικῶς ἐποίουν λέγοντας, οἱ  
 δὲ νῦν ῥητορικῶς. ἔστιν δὲ ἦθος μὲν τὸ τοιοῦτον ὃ δηλοῖ τὴν 17  
 προαίρεσιν ὅποιά τις [προ]αιρεῖται ἢ φεύγει· διόπερ οὐκ  
 10 ἔχουσιν ἦθος τῶν λόγων ἐν οἷς οὐκ ἔστι δῆλον ἢ ἐν  
 οἷς μὴδ' ὅλως ἔστιν ὅ τι [προ]αιρεῖται ἢ φεύγει ὁ λέγων·  
 διάνοια δέ, ἐν οἷς ἀποδεικνύουσί τι ὡς ἔστιν ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν  
 ἢ καθόλου τι ἀποφαίνονται. τέταρτον δὲ τῶν λεγομένων ἢ 18  
 λέξις· λέγω δέ, ὡσπερ πρότερον εἴρηται, λέξιν εἶναι τὴν  
 15 διὰ τῆς ὀνομασίας ἐρμηνείαν, ὃ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐμμέτρων καὶ  
 ἐπὶ τῶν λόγων ἔχει τὴν αὐτὴν δύναμιν. τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν 19  
 [πέντε] ἢ μελοποιία μέγιστον τῶν ἡδυσμάτων, ἢ δὲ ὄψις  
 ψυχαγωγικὸν μὲν, ἀτεχνότατον δὲ καὶ ἥκιστα οἰκεῖον τῆς ποιη-  
 τικῆς· <ἴσ>ως γὰρ τῆς τραγωδίας δύναμις καὶ ἄνευ ἀγῶνος

38. παραπλήσιον . . . εἰκόνα supra post πραγμάτων v. 31 collocavit Castel-  
 vetro. 1450 b l. 1. ἐνα λείψειε A<sup>c</sup> 3. τε codd.: γὰρ Hermann 6.  
 ἐπὶ τῶν λόγων secl. M. Schmidt 9-11. ὅποιά τις . . . φεύγει ὁ λέγων  
 Gomperz, alios secutus: ὅποιά τις (ὁ ποῖα τίς) ἐν οἷς οὐκ ἔστι δῆλον ἢ  
 προαιρεῖται ἢ φεύγει· διόπερ οὐκ ἔχουσιν ἦθος τῶν λόγων ἐν οἷς μὴδ' ὅλως ἔστιν  
 ὃ τις (ὃ τι apogr.) προαιρεῖται ἢ φεύγει ὁ λέγων A<sup>c</sup>: ὅποιά τις· διόπερ οὐκ  
 ἔχουσιν . . . φεύγει ὁ λέγων (verbis ἐν οἷς οὐκ ἔστι δῆλον ἢ προαιρεῖται ἢ  
 φεύγει omissis cum Arabe) Margoliouth. Suspiciatur Susemihl ἐν οἷς οὐκ  
 ἔστι . . . ἢ φεύγει et ἐν οἷς μὴδ' ὅλως ἔστιν . . . ἢ φεύγει duplicem lectionem  
 fuisse 11. τι apogr.: τις A<sup>c</sup> 13. λεγομένων Gomperz: μὲν λόγων  
 codd.: ἐν λόγῳ Bywater 17. πέντε A<sup>c</sup>: secl. Spengel (confirm. Arabs):  
 πέμπτων apogr. 18. ἀτεχνότατον A<sup>c</sup> 19. ἴσως Meiser: ὡς A<sup>c</sup>: ἢ  
 apogr.: ὅλως Gomperz

(1) the soul of a tragedy: Character holds the second place. — 2

1450 b A similar fact is seen in painting. (2) The most beautiful 15  
colours, laid on confusedly, will not give as much pleasure  
as the chalk outline of a portrait. Thus Tragedy is the  
imitation of an action, and of the agents, mainly with a  
view to the action. ←

(3) Third in order is Thought,—that is, the faculty of 16  
saying what is possible and pertinent in given circum-  
stances. In the case of oratory, this is the function of  
the political art and of the art of rhetoric: and so indeed  
the older poets make their characters speak the language  
of civic life; the poets of our time, the language of the  
rhetoricians. Character is that which reveals moral 17  
purpose, showing what kind of things a man chooses or  
avoids. Speeches, therefore, which do not make this  
manifest, or in which the speaker does not choose or  
avoid anything whatever, are not expressive of character.  
Thought, on the other hand, is found where something is  
proved to be or not to be, or a general maxim is  
enunciated. —

(4) Fourth among the elements enumerated comes 18  
Diction; by which I mean, as has been already said, the  
→ expression of the meaning in words; and its essence is ←  
the same both in verse and prose. ?

(5) Of the remaining elements Song holds the chief place 19  
among the embellishments.

(6) The Spectacle has, indeed, an emotional attraction of  
its own, but, of all the parts, it is the least artistic, and  
connected least with the art of poetry. For the power  
of Tragedy, we may be sure, is felt even apart from  
representation and actors. Besides, the production of

20 και ὑποκριτῶν ἔστιν, ἔτι δὲ κυριωτέρα περὶ τὴν ἀπεργασίαν τῶν ὄψεων ἢ τοῦ σκευοποιοῦ τέχνη τῆς τῶν ποιητῶν ἔστιν.

IRS  
OST (MPO) TAVT  
VII  
PANT.

Διωρισμένων δὲ τούτων, λέγωμεν μετὰ ταῦτα ποίαν  
τινὰ δεῖ τὴν σύστασιν εἶναι τῶν πραγμάτων, ἐπειδὴ τοῦτο  
καὶ πρῶτον καὶ μέγιστον τῆς τραγωδίας ἔστιν. κείται δὴ 2  
25 ἡμῖν τὴν τραγωδίαν τελείας καὶ ὅλης πράξεως εἶναι μί-  
μησιν ἐχοῦσας τι μέγεθος. ἔστιν γὰρ ὅλον καὶ μηδὲν ἔχον  
μέγεθος. ὅλον δὲ ἔστιν τὸ ἔχον ἀρχὴν καὶ μέσον καὶ τε- 3  
λευτήν. ἀρχὴ δὲ ἔστιν ὃ αὐτὸ μὲν μὴ ἐξ ἀνάγκης μετ'  
ἄλλο ἔστιν, μετ' ἐκείνο δ' ἕτερον πέφυκεν εἶναι ἢ γίνεσθαι.  
30 τελευτὴ δὲ τοῦναντίον ὃ αὐτὸ μετ' ἄλλο πέφυκεν εἶναι ἢ  
ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἄλλο οὐδέν.  
μέσον δὲ ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ μετ' ἄλλο καὶ μετ' ἐκείνο ἕτερον.  
δεῖ ἄρα τοὺς συνεστῶτας εὐ μύθους μὴθ' ὀπόθεν ἔτυχε  
ἄρχεσθαι μὴθ' ὅπου ἔτυχε τελευτᾶν, ἀλλὰ κεχρησθαι ταῖς  
35 εἰρημέναις ἰδέαις. ἔτι δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ καλὸν καὶ ζῶον καὶ ἅπαν 4  
πρᾶγμα ὃ συνέστηκεν ἐκ τινῶν οὐ μόνον ταῦτα τεταγμένα  
δεῖ ἔχειν ἀλλὰ καὶ μέγεθος ὑπάρχειν μὴ τὸ τυχόν· τὸ  
γὰρ καλὸν ἐκ μεγέθει καὶ τάξει ἔστιν, διὸ οὔτε πᾶμμικρον  
ἂν τι γένοιτο καλὸν ζῶον (συγχεῖται γὰρ ἡ θεωρία ἐγγὺς  
40 τοῦ ἀναισθητοῦ χρόνου γινομένη), οὔτε παμμέγεθες (οὐ γὰρ  
1451 a ἅμα ἡ θεωρία γίνεται ἀλλ' οἴχεται τοῖς θεωροῦσι τὸ ἐν  
καὶ τὸ ὅλον ἐκ τῆς θεωρίας), οἷον εἰ μυρίων σταδίων εἴη  
ζῶον· ὥστε δεῖ καθάπερ ἐπὶ τῶν σωμάτων καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν 5  
ζῶων ἔχειν μὲν μέγεθος, τοῦτο δὲ εὐσύνοπτον εἶναι, οὕτω

1450  
1451  
1452  
1453  
1454  
1455  
1456  
1457  
1458  
1459  
1460

34

24. δὴ Bywater: δ' A<sup>c</sup> 28. μὴ ἐξ ἀνάγκης codd.: ἐξ ἀνάγκης μὴ Pazzi  
35. ἰδέαις apogr.: εἰδέαις A<sup>c</sup> 38. πᾶμμικρον Riccardianus 16: πᾶν μικρὸν  
A<sup>c</sup>: πᾶν μικρὸν Laurentianus 1x. 16 40. χρόνου secl. Bonitz: tutatur  
Arabs παμμέγεθες Riccardianus 16: πᾶν μέγεθος A<sup>c</sup>: πᾶν μέγα Lauren-  
tianus 1x. 16 1451 a 3. σωμάτων] συστημάτων Bywater

spectacular effects depends more on the art of the stage machinist than on that of the poet.

VII These principles being established, let us now discuss <sup>ΕΠΙΣΤΑΣΙΣ</sup> the proper structure of the Plot, since this is the first <sup>τῶν</sup> <sup>ὑποκειμένων</sup> and most important part of Tragedy.

Now, according to our definition, Tragedy is an <sup>2</sup> imitation of an action that is complete, and whole, and of a certain magnitude; for there may be a whole that is wanting in magnitude. A whole is that which has <sup>3</sup> a beginning, a middle, and an end. A beginning is that which does not itself follow anything by causal necessity, but after which something naturally is or comes to be. An end, on the contrary, is that which itself naturally follows some other thing, either by necessity, or as a rule, but has nothing following it. A middle is that which follows something as some other thing follows it. A well constructed plot, therefore, must neither begin nor end at haphazard, but conform to these principles.

Again, a beautiful object, whether it be a picture of <sup>4</sup> a living organism or any whole composed of parts, must not only have an orderly arrangement of parts, but must also be of a certain magnitude; for beauty depends on magnitude and order. Hence an exceedingly small picture cannot be beautiful; for the view of it is confused, the object being seen in an almost imperceptible moment of time. Nor, again, can one of vast size be <sup>5</sup> beautiful; for as the eye cannot take it all in at once, the unity and sense of the whole is lost for the spectator; as for instance if there were a picture a thousand miles long, therefore, in the case of animate bodies and <sup>6</sup> certain magnitude is necessary, and a magni-



5 καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν μύθων ἔχειν μὲν μῆκος, τοῦτο δὲ εὐμνημόνευ-  
 τον εἶναι. τοῦ μήκους ὄρος <ὁ> μὲν πρὸς τοὺς ἀγῶνας καὶ 6  
 τὴν αἴσθησιν οὐ τῆς τέχνης ἐστίν· εἰ γὰρ ἔδει ἑκατὸν  
 τραγῳδίας ἀγωνίζεσθαι, πρὸς κλεψύδρας ἂν ἠγωνίζοντο,  
 ὥσπερ ποτὲ καὶ ἄλλοτέ φασιν. ὁ δὲ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν φύσιν 7  
 10 τοῦ πράγματος ὄρος, αἰεὶ μὲν ὁ μείζων μέγρι τοῦ σύν-  
 δηλος εἶναι καλλίων ἐστὶ κατὰ τὸ μέγεθος· ὡς δὲ ἀ-  
 πλῶς διορίσαντας εἰπεῖν, ἐν ὅσῳ μεγέθει κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ἢ  
 τὸ ἀναγκαῖον ἐφεξῆς γιγνομένων συμβαίνει εἰς εὐτυχίαν  
 14 ἐκ δυστυχίας ἢ ἐξ εὐτυχίας εἰς δυστυχίαν μεταβάλλειν,  
 VIII ἱκανὸς ὄρος ἐστὶν τοῦ μεγέθους. Μῦθος δ' ἐστὶν εἰς  
 οὐχ ὥσπερ τινὲς οἴονται ἔαν περὶ ἓνα ἢ· πολλὰ γὰρ  
 καὶ ἄπειρα τῷ ἐνὶ συμβαίνει, ἐξ ὧν [ἐνίων] οὐδέν ἐστιν  
 ἓν· οὕτως δὲ καὶ πράξεις ἐνὸς πολλαί εἰσιν, ἐξ ὧν  
 μία οὐδεμία γίνεται πράξις. διὸ πάντες εἰκόασιν ἀμαρ- 2  
 20 τάνειν ὅσοι τῶν ποιητῶν Ἑρακλῆϊδα Ἐθσηϊδα καὶ τὰ  
 τοιαῦτα ποιήματα πεποιήκασιν· οἴονται γάρ, ἐπεὶ εἰς ἦν  
 ὁ Ἑρακλῆς, ἓνα καὶ τὸν μῦθον εἶναι προσήκειν. ὁ δ' "Ο- 3  
 μηρος ὥσπερ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα διαφέρει καὶ τοῦτ' εἰκεν κα-  
 λῶς ἰδεῖν ἦτοι διὰ τέχνην ἢ διὰ φύσιν· Ὀδύσειαν γὰρ  
 25 ποιῶν οὐκ ἐποίησεν ἅπαντα ὅσα αὐτῷ συνέβη, οἶον πλη-  
 γῆναι μὲν ἐν τῷ Παρνασῷ, μανῆναι δὲ προσποιήσασθαι ἐν

6. ὁ add. Bursian μὲν πρὸς A<sup>c</sup>: πρὸς μὲν apogr. 8. κλεψύδραν  
 apogr. 9. ἄλλοτε φασίν codd.: ἄλλοτ' εἰώθασιν M. Schmidt; quod olim  
 recepi, sed ποτὲ καὶ ἄλλοτε vix aliud significare potest quam 'olim  
 aliquando.' Quae in Arabe leguntur ('sicut solemus dicere etiam aliquo  
 tempore et aliquando'), alterutri lectioni subsidio esse possunt . 17.  
 ἐνὶ Guelferbytanus: γένει A<sup>c</sup> (cf. 1447 a 17): τῷ γ' ἐνὶ Vettori ἐνίων  
 secl. Spengel 18. αἰ ante πολλαί add. apogr.

e which may be easily embraced in one view; so in the plot, a certain length is necessary, and a length which can be easily embraced by the memory. The limit of length in relation to dramatic competition and sensuous presentment, is no part of artistic theory. For had it been the rule for a hundred tragedies to compete together, the performance would have been regulated by the water-clock,—as indeed we are told was formerly done. But the limit as fixed by the nature of the drama itself is this:—the greater the length, the more beautiful will the piece be by reason of its size, provided that the whole be perspicuous. And to define the matter roughly, we may say that the proper magnitude is comprised within such limits, that the sequence of events, according to the law of probability or necessity, will admit of a change from bad fortune to good, or from good fortune to bad.

VIII Unity of plot does not, as some persons think, consist in the unity of the hero. For infinitely various are the incidents in one man's life, which cannot be reduced to unity; and so, too, there are many actions of one man out of which we cannot make one action. Hence the error, as it appears, of all poets who have composed a Heracleid, a Theseid, or other poems of the kind. They imagine that as Heracles was one man, the story of Heracles must also be a unity. But Homer, as in all else he is of surpassing merit, here too—whether from art or natural genius—seems to have happily discerned the truth. In composing the *Odyssey* he did not include all the adventures of Odysseus—such as his wound on Parnassus, or his feigned madness at the mustering of

τῷ ἀγερμῷ, ὃν οὐδὲν θατέρου γενομένου ἀναγκαῖον ἢ εἰκὸς θάτερον γενέσθαι, ἀλλὰ περὶ μίαν πράξιν λέγομεν τὴν Ὀδύσειαν συνέστησεν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ  
 30 Ἰλιάδα. χρῆ οὖν καθάπερ καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις μιμητικαῖς ἢ μίμησις ἐνός ἐστὶν οὕτω καὶ τὸν μῦθον, ἐπεὶ πράξεως μίμησις ἐστὶ, μιᾶς τε εἶναι καὶ ταύτης ὅλης καὶ τὰ μέρη συνεστάναι τῶν πραγμάτων οὕτως ὥστε μετατιθεμένου τινὸς μέρους ἢ ἀφαιρουμένου διαφέρεσθαι καὶ κινεῖσθαι τὸ ὅλον· ὃ γὰρ  
 35 προσὸν ἢ μὴ προσὸν μηδὲν ποιεῖ ἐπίδηλον, οὐδὲν μῶριον τοῦ ὅλου ἐστίν.

IX Φανερόν δὲ ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων καὶ ὅτι οὐ τὸ τὰ γενόμενα λέγειν, τοῦτο ποιητοῦ ἔργον ἐστίν, ἀλλ' οἷα ἂν γένοιτο καὶ τὰ δυνατὰ κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ἢ τὸ ἀναγκαῖον. ὁ γὰρ 2  
 1451 b ἱστορικὸς καὶ ὁ ποιητὴς οὐ τῷ ἢ ἔμμετρα λέγειν ἢ ἄμμετρα διαφέρουσιν (εἶη γὰρ ἂν τὰ Ἡροδότου εἰς μέτρα τεθῆναι, καὶ οὐδὲν ἦττον ἂν εἴη ἱστορία τις μετὰ μέτρον ἢ ἄνευ μέτρων)· ἀλλὰ τούτῳ διαφέρει, τῷ τὸν μὲν τὰ γενόμενα λέγειν,  
 5 τὸν δὲ οἷα ἂν γένοιτο. διὸ καὶ φιλοσοφώτερον καὶ 3 σπουδαιότερον ποίησις ἱστορίας ἐστίν· ἢ μὲν γὰρ ποίησις μᾶλλον τὰ καθόλου, ἢ δ' ἱστορία τὰ καθ' ἕκαστον λέγει. ἐστὶν δὲ καθόλου μὲν, τῷ ποίω τὰ ποῖα ἅττα συμβαίνει 4 λέγειν ἢ πράττειν κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ἢ τὸ ἀναγκαῖον, οὐ στο-  
 10 χάζεται ἢ ποίησις ὀνόματα ἐπιτιθεμένη· τὸ δὲ καθ' ἕκα-  
 στον, τί Ἀλκιβιάδης ἔπραξεν ἢ τί ἔπαθεν. ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς 5  
 κωμῳδίας ἤδη τοῦτο δῆλον γέγονεν· συστήσαντες γὰρ τὸν

27. ἢ add. apogr. 29. λέγομεν apogr.: λέγομεν A<sup>c</sup>: ἂν λέγομεν Vahlen  
 32. καὶ ταύτης] ταύτης καὶ Susemihl 34. διαφέρεσθαι] διαφθεῖρεσθαι  
 Twining ('corrumpatur et confundatur' Arabs): habuit fort. utramque  
 lect. Σ (Margoliouth): fort. διαφορεῖσθαι (cf. de Div. 2. 464 b 13) 35.  
 ποιεῖ, ἐπίδηλον ὡς apogr. 37. οὐ τὸ apogr. (confirm. Arabs): οὕτω A<sup>c</sup>  
 38. γινόμενα Riccardianus 16: γινόμενα cett. 39. καὶ τὰ δυνατὰ siecl.  
 Maggi 1451 b 4. τούτῳ . . . τῷ apogr.: τοῦτο . . . τῷ A<sup>c</sup>: τοῦτο . . . τὸ  
 Spengel 10. τὸ apogr.: τὸν A<sup>c</sup>

host—incidents between which there was no necessary probable connexion: but he made the Odyssey, and likewise the Iliad, to centre round an action that in our sense of the word is one. As therefore, in the other imitative arts, the imitation is one when the object imitated is one, so the plot, being an imitation of an action, must imitate one action and that a whole, the structural union of the parts being such that, if any one of them is displaced or removed, the whole will be disjointed and disturbed. For a thing whose presence or absence makes no visible difference, is not an organic part of the whole.

IX It is, moreover, evident from what has been said, that it is not the function of the poet to relate what has happened, but what may happen,—what is possible according to the law of probability or necessity. The poet and the historian differ not by writing in verse or in prose. The work of Herodotus might be put into verse, and it would still be a species of history, with metre no less than without it. The true difference is that one relates what has happened, the other what may happen. Poetry, therefore, is a more philosophical and a higher thing than history: for poetry tends to express the universal, history the particular. By the universal I mean how a person of a certain type will on occasion speak or act, according to the law of probability or necessity; and it is this universality at which poetry aims in the names she attaches to the personages. The particular is—for example—what Alcibiades did or suffered. In Comedy this is already apparent: for here the poet first constructs the plot on the lines of prob-

*descriptive → mutual characteristics*

μῦθον διὰ τῶν εἰκότων οὐ τὰ τυχόντα ὀνόματα  
 θέασιν, καὶ οὐχ ὥσπερ οἱ ἰαμβοποιοὶ περὶ τὸν καθ' ἕκαστον  
 15 ποιούσιν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς τραγῳδίας τῶν γενομένων ὀνομάτων 6  
 ἀντέχονται. αἴτιον δ' ὅτι πιθανόν ἐστὶ τὸ δυνατόν. τὰ μὲν  
 οὖν μὴ γενόμενα οὐπω πιστεύομεν εἶναι δυνατά, τὰ δὲ γε-  
 νόμενα φανερόν ὅτι δυνατά, οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἐγένετο, εἰ ἦν ἀδύ-  
 νατα. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν ταῖς τραγῳδαῖς ἐνίαις μὲν ἐν 7  
 20 ἢ δύο τῶν γνωρίμων ἐστὶν ὀνομάτων, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πεποιη-  
 μένα, ἐν ἐνίαις δὲ οὐδ' ἓν, οἷον ἐν τῷ Ἀγάθωνος Ἀνθεί· ὁμοίως  
 γὰρ ἐν τούτῳ τὰ τε πράγματα καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα πεποιήται, καὶ  
 οὐδὲν ἤττον εὐφραίνει. ὥστ' οὐ πάντως εἶναι ζητητέον τῶν 8  
 παραδεδομένων μύθων, περὶ οὓς αἱ τραγῳδαὶ εἰσὶν, ἀντ-  
 25 ἔχεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ γελοῖον τοῦτο ζητεῖν, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ γνω-  
 ριμα ὀλίγοις γνωρίμα ἐστὶν ἀλλ' ὅμως εὐφραίνει πάντας.  
 δῆλον οὖν ἐκ τούτων ὅτι τὸν ποιητὴν μᾶλλον τῶν μύθων 9  
 εἶναι δεῖ ποιητὴν ἢ τῶν μέτρων, ὅσῳ ποιητῆς κατὰ τὴν μί-  
 μησίν ἐστὶν, μιμείται δὲ τὰς πράξεις. κὰν ἄρα συμβῆ γενό-  
 30 μενα ποιεῖν, οὐθὲν ἤττον ποιητῆς ἐστὶ· τῶν γὰρ γενομένων  
 ἔνια οὐδὲν κωλύει τοιαῦτα εἶναι οἷα ἂν εἰκὸς γενέσθαι καὶ  
 δυνατὰ γενέσθαι, καθ' ὃ ἐκείνος αὐτῶν ποιητῆς ἐστὶν.

τῶν δὲ ἄλλων μύθων καὶ πράξεων αἱ ἐπεισοδιώδεις 10

13. οὐ scripsi ('nequaquam' Arabs): οὕτω codd. (cf. 1451 a 37) ἐπι-  
 τιθέασι apogr. 14. τὸν A<sup>c</sup>: τῶν apogr. 16. πιθανόν A<sup>c</sup> 19. ἐν  
 ante ἐνίαις add. apogr. (ceterum cf. Dem. or. iii. 11, xviii. 12) 21. οὐδ' ἐν]  
 οὐθ' ἐν A<sup>c</sup>: οὐθὲν apogr. οἷον . . . Ἀνθεί] 'quemadmodum si quis unum esse  
 bonum statuit' Arabs; male Syrus legisse videtur ἐν τῷ ἀγαθὸν δε ἂν θῆ  
 (Margoliouth) Ἀνθεί Welcker: ἀνθεί codd. 23. ὥστ' οὐ] ὡς τοῦ  
 A<sup>c</sup> οὐ πάντως εἶναι, si sana sunt, arcte cohaerent (cf. οὐχ ἑκὼν εἶναι,  
 κατὰ δύναμιν εἶναι, κατὰ τοῦτο εἶναι, similia): εἶναι secl. Spengel 24. αἰ  
 <εὐδοκιμοῦσαι> τραγῳδαὶ coni. Vahlen 31. καὶ δυνατὰ γενέσθαι secl.  
 Vorländer: om. Arabs 33. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων Tyrwhitt: τῶν δὲ ἀπλῶν codd.:  
 ἀπλῶς δὲ τῶν Castelvetro

ability, and then inserts characteristic names;—unlike the lampooners who write about particular individuals. But tragedians still keep to real names, the reason being that what is possible is credible: what has not happened we do not at once feel sure to be possible; but what has happened is manifestly possible: otherwise it would not have happened. Still there are some tragedies in which there are only one or two well known names, the rest being fictitious. In others, none are well known,—as in Agathon's Antheus, where incidents and names alike are fictitious, and yet they give none the less pleasure. We must not, therefore, at all costs keep to the received legends, which are the usual subjects of Tragedy. Indeed, it would be absurd to attempt it; for even subjects that are known are known only to a few, and yet give pleasure to all. It clearly follows that the poet or 'maker' should be the maker of plots rather than of verses; since he is a poet because he imitates, and what he imitates are actions. And even if he chances to take an historical subject, he is none the less a poet; for there is no reason why some events that have actually happened should not conform to the law of the probable and possible, and in virtue of that quality in them he is their poet or maker.

Of all plots and actions the epeisodic are the worst.

εἰσὶν χεῖρισται· λέγω δ' ἐπεισοδιώδη μῦθον ἐν ᾧ τὰ ἐπεισο-  
 35 ὅδια μετ' ἄλληλα οὐτ' εἰκὸς οὐτ' ἀνάγκη εἶναι. τοιαῦται  
 δὲ ποιοῦνται ὑπὸ μὲν τῶν φαύλων ποιητῶν δι' αὐτούς, ὑπὸ  
 δὲ τῶν ἀγαθῶν διὰ τοὺς ὑποκριτάς· ἀγωνίσματα γὰρ  
 ποιοῦντες καὶ παρὰ τὴν δύναμιν παρατείνοντες μῦθον πολ-  
 1452 a λάκις διαστρέφειν ἀναγκάζονται τὸ ἐφεξῆς. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ 11  
 μόνον τελείας ἐστὶ πράξεως ἢ μίμησις ἀλλὰ καὶ φοβερῶν  
 καὶ ἐλεεινῶν, ταῦτα δὲ γίνεται [καὶ] μάλιστα ὅταν γένηται  
 παρὰ τὴν δόξαν, καὶ μᾶλλον <ὅταν> δι' ἄλληλα· τὸ γὰρ θαν- 12  
 5 μαστὸν οὕτως ἔξει μᾶλλον ἢ εἰ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου καὶ  
 τῆς τύχης, ἐπεὶ καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης ταῦτα θαυμασιώτατα,  
 δοκεῖ ὅσα ὥσπερ ἐπίτηδες φαίνεται γεγονέναι, οἷον ὡς ὁ  
 ἀνδριάς ὁ τοῦ Μίτυος ἐν Ἄργει ἀπέκτεινεν τὸν αἴτιον τοῦ  
 θανάτου τῷ Μίτυι, θεωροῦντι ἐμπροσθέν· ἔοικε γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα  
 10 οὐκ εἰκῆ γενέσθαι· ὥστε ἀνάγκη τοὺς τοιούτους εἶναι καλ-  
 λίους μύθους.

X Εἰσὶ δὲ τῶν μύθων οἱ μὲν ἀπλοῖ οἱ δὲ πεπλεγμένοι,  
 καὶ γὰρ αἱ πράξεις ὧν μιμήσεις οἱ μῦθοί εἰσιν ὑπάρχου-  
 σιν εὐθύς οὐσαι τοιαῦται. λέγω δὲ ἀπλήν μὲν πρᾶξιν ἧς 2  
 15 γινομένης ὥσπερ ὄρισται συνεχούς καὶ μιᾶς ἄνευ περιπε-  
τείας ἢ ἀναγνωρισμοῦ ἢ μετάβασις γίνεται, πεπλεγμένη  
 δ' ἐστὶν ἧς μετὰ ἀναγνωρισμοῦ ἢ περιπετείας ἢ ἀμφοῖν ἢ  
 μετάβασις ἐστίν. ταῦτα δὲ δεῖ γίνεσθαι ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς συ- 3  
 στάσεως τοῦ μύθου, ὥστε ἐκ τῶν προγεγενημένων συμβαίνειν

37. ὑποκριτάς Δ<sup>c</sup> (cf. Rhet. iii. 11. 1403 b 33): κριτὰς apogr. 38. παρατείνοντες apogr.: παρατείναντες Δ<sup>c</sup> 1452 a 2. ἢ secl. Gomperz 3.  
 καὶ secl. Susemihl 4. καὶ μᾶλλον post καὶ μάλιστα codd.: post δόξαν  
 Reiz (cf. Rhet. iii. 9. 1410 a 21): καὶ κάλλιον Tucker: καὶ μᾶλλον sive καὶ  
 μάλιστα secl. Spengel: καὶ μᾶλλον ante καὶ μάλιστα Richards ὅταν  
 add. Reiz 9. μῆτιν Δ<sup>c</sup> 17. δ' ἐστίν ἧς Susemihl: δὲ λέξις Δ<sup>c</sup>: δὲ ἐξ  
 ἧς Riccardianus 16: δὲ πρᾶξις apogr.: δὲ ἐστίν ἐξ ἧς (h. e. δὲ 'Α' ἐξῆς) Vahlen

I call a plot 'episodic' in which the episodes or acts succeed one another without probable or necessary sequence.

Bad poets compose such pieces by their own fault, good poets, to please the players; for, as they write show pieces for competition, they stretch the plot beyond its capacity, and are often forced to break the natural continuity.

But again, Tragedy is an imitation not only of a complete action, but of events terrible and pitiful. Such an effect is best produced when the events come on us by surprise; and the effect is heightened when, at the same time, they follow as cause and effect. The tragic wonder will then be greater than if they happened of themselves or by accident; for even coincidences are most striking when they have an air of design. We may instance the statue of Mityas at Argos, which fell upon his murderer while he was a spectator at a festival, and killed him. Such events seem not to be due to mere chance. Plots, therefore, constructed on these principles are necessarily the best.

X Plots are either Simple or Complex, for the actions in real life, of which the plots are an imitation, obviously show a similar distinction. An action which is one and 2 continuous in the sense above defined, I call Simple, when the change of fortune takes place without Reversal of Intention and without Recognition.

A Complex action is one in which the change is accompanied by such Reversal, or by Recognition, or by both. These last should arise from the internal structure of the plot, so that what follows should be the



20 ἢ ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἢ κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς γίγνεσθαι ταῦτα· διαφέρει γὰρ πολὺ τὸ γίγνεσθαι τάδε διὰ τάδε ἢ μετὰ τάδε.

XI Ἔστι δὲ περιπέτεια μὲν ἢ εἰς τὸ ἐναντίον τῶν πραττομένων μεταβολή, [καθάπερ εἴρηται,] καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ὡσπερ λέγομεν κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ἢ ἀναγκαῖον· ὡσπερ ἐν τῷ Οἰδίποδι 25 ἐλθῶν ὡς εὐφρανῶν τὸν Οἰδίπου καὶ ἀπαλλάξων τοῦ πρὸς τὴν μητέρα φόβου, δηλώσας ὅς ἦν, τοῦναντίον ἐποίησεν· καὶ ἐν τῷ Λυγκεῖ ὁ μὲν ἀγόμενος ὡς ἀποθανούμενος, ὁ δὲ Δαναὸς ἀκολουθῶν ὡς ἀποκτενῶν, τὸν μὲν συνέβη ἐκ τῶν πεπραγμένων ἀποθανεῖν, τὸν δὲ σωθῆναι. ἀναγνώρισις 2 30 δέ, ὡσπερ καὶ τοῦνομα σημαίνει, ἐξ ἀγνοίας εἰς γνῶσιν μεταβολή ἢ εἰς φιλίαν ἢ εἰς ἐχθραν τῶν πρὸς εὐτυχίαν ἢ δυστυχίαν ὀρισμένων· καλλίστη δὲ ἀναγνώρισις, ὅταν ἅμα περιπέτεια γίνονται, οἷον ἔχει ἢ ἐν τῷ Οἰδίποδι. εἰσὶν μὲν 3 οὖν καὶ ἄλλαι ἀναγνωρίσεις· καὶ γὰρ πρὸς ἄλφυχα καὶ τὰ 35 τυχόντα ἔστιν ὡς <δ> περ εἴρηται συμβαίνει, καὶ εἰ πέπραγέ τις ἢ μὴ πέπραγεν ἔστιν ἀναγνωρίσαι. ἀλλ' ἢ μάλιστα τοῦ μύθου καὶ ἢ μάλιστα τῆς πράξεως ἢ εἰρημένη ἐστίν· ἢ γὰρ τοιαύτη ἀναγνώρισις καὶ περιπέτεια ἢ ἔλεον 4 1452 b ἔξει ἢ φόβου, οἷων πράξεων ἢ τραγωδία μίμησις ὑπόκειται· ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὸ ἀτυχεῖν καὶ τὸ εὐτυχεῖν ἐπὶ τῶν τοιούτων

20. ταῦτα] τάναντία Bonitz : τὰ ὅστερα Gomperz 23. καθάπερ εἴρηται secl. Zeller : <ἢ> καθ' ἃ προήρηται (deleto commate post μεταβολή) Essen  
31. Post ἐχθραν add. ἢ ἄλλο τι Gomperz 32. ἅμα περιπέτεια Gomperz  
33. γίνονται A<sup>c</sup> οἷαν Bywater 35. ὡς περ Spengel : ὡσπερ A<sup>c</sup> : δδ' <δ> περ Gomperz συμβαίνει A<sup>c</sup> : συμβαίνειν apogr. 36. ἢ apogr. : εἰ A<sup>c</sup> 38. καὶ περιπέτεια secl. Susemihl καὶ <μάλιστα' ἐάν καὶ> περιπέτεια ἢ ἔλεον conl. Vahlen 1452 b l. οἷων apogr. : οἷων A<sup>c</sup> 2. ἐτι δὲ] ἐπειδὴ Susemihl (commate post ὑπόκειται posito)

necessary or probable result of the preceding action. It makes all the difference whether any given event is a case of *propter hoc* or *post hoc*.

XI Reversal of Intention is a change by which the action veers round to its opposite, subject always to our rule of probability or necessity. Thus in the Oedipus, the messenger comes to cheer Oedipus and free him from his alarms about his mother, but by revealing who he is, he produces the opposite effect. Again in the Lynceus, Lynceus is being led away to his death, and Danaus goes with him, meaning to slay him; but the outcome of the action is, that Danaus is killed and Lynceus saved.

Recognition, as the name indicates, is a change from 2 <sup>ignorance</sup> ignorance to knowledge, producing love or hate between the persons destined by the poet for good or bad fortune. The best form of recognition is coincident with a Reversal of Intention, as in the Oedipus. There are indeed other 3 forms. Even inanimate things of the most trivial kind may sometimes be objects of recognition. Again, we may recognise or discover whether a person has done a thing or not. But the recognition which is most intimately connected with the plot and action is, as we have said, the recognition of persons. This recognition, combined 1452 b with Reversal, will produce either pity or fear; and actions producing these effects are those which, by our definition, Tragedy represents. Moreover, it is upon such situations that the issues of good or bad fortune will depend.

συμβήσεται. ἐπεὶ δὴ ἡ ἀναγνώρισις τινῶν ἐστὶν ἀναγνώρισις, 5  
αἱ μὲν θατέρου πρὸς τὸν ἕτερον μόνον, ὅταν ἢ δῆλος ἄτερος  
5 τίς ἐστὶν, ὅτε δὲ ἀμφοτέρους δεῖ ἀναγνωρίσαι, οἷον ἡ  
μὲν Ἰφιγένεια τῷ Ὀρέστη ἀνεγνωρίσθη ἐκ τῆς πέμψεως  
τῆς ἐπιστολῆς, ἐκείνου δὲ πρὸς τὴν Ἰφιγένειαν ἄλλης ἔδει  
ἀναγνωρίσεως.

Δύο μὲν οὖν τοῦ μύθου μέρη <sup>πρὸς τὸν ἕτερον</sup> περὶ ταῦτ' ἐστὶ, περιπέτεια 6  
10 καὶ ἀναγνώρισις, τρίτον δὲ πάθος. [τούτων δὲ περιπέτεια μὲν  
καὶ ἀναγνώρισις εἴρηται,] πάθος δὲ ἐστὶ πρᾶξις φθαρτικὴ ἢ  
ὀδυνηρά, οἷον οἷ τε ἐν τῷ φανερωῷ θάνατοι καὶ αἱ περι-  
ωδυνίαι καὶ τρώσεις καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα.

XII [Μέρη δὲ τραγῳδίας οἷς μὲν ὡς εἶδεσι δεῖ χρῆσθαι  
15 πρότερον εἵπομεν, κατὰ δὲ τὸ ποσὸν καὶ εἰς ἃ διαιρεῖται  
κεχωρισμένα τάδε ἐστίν, πρόλογος ἐπεισόδιον ἔξοδος χο-  
ρικόν, καὶ τούτου τὸ μὲν πάροδος τὸ δὲ στάσιμον· κοινὰ μὲν  
ἀπάντων ταῦτα, ἴδια δὲ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς σκηνῆς καὶ κόμμοι.  
ἐστὶν δὲ πρόλογος μὲν μέρος ὅλον τραγῳδίας τὸ πρὸ χοροῦ 2  
20 παρόδου, ἐπεισόδιον δὲ μέρος ὅλον τραγῳδίας τὸ μεταξὺ  
ὅλων χορικῶν μελῶν, ἔξοδος δὲ μέρος ὅλον τραγῳδίας  
μεθ' ὃ οὐκ ἐστὶ χοροῦ μέλος· χορικοῦ δὲ πάροδος μὲν ἢ  
πρώτη λέξις ὅλη χοροῦ, στάσιμον δὲ μέλος χοροῦ τὸ ἄνευ  
ἀναπαίστου καὶ τροχαίου, κόμμος δὲ θρήνος κοινὸς χοροῦ καὶ  
25 <τῶν> ἀπὸ σκηνῆς. μέρη δὲ τραγῳδίας οἷς μὲν ὡς εἶδεσι δεῖ 3

3. ἐπεὶ δὴ Parisinus 2038 : ἐπειδὴ codd. cett. 4. ἕτερον] ἐταῖρον Σ, ut videtur ἄτερος Parisinus 2038 : ἕτερος codd. cett. 7. ἐκείνου Bywater : ἐκεῖνω A<sup>c</sup> : ἐκεῖνω apogr. 9. περὶ secl. Maggi: om., ut videtur, Σ ταῦτ'] ταῦτὰ Twining 10. τούτων δὲ . . . εἴρηται secl. Susemihl : om. Arabs 12. οἷ τε apogr. : ὅτε A<sup>c</sup> 14. totum hoc cap. secl. Ritter, recte, ut opinor 17. κοινὰ μὲν . . . κόμμοι del. Susemihl 19. προχωροῦ A<sup>c</sup> 23. ὅλη Westphal : ὅλου A<sup>c</sup> 25. τῶν add. Christ praeaeunte Ritter ὡς εἶδεσι add. apogr.

Recognition, then, being between persons, it may happen 5 —  
 that one person only is recognised by the other—when  
 the latter is already known—or it may be necessary that  
 the recognition should be on both sides. Thus Iphigenia | — P  
 is revealed to Orestes by the sending of the letter; but  
 another act of recognition is required to make Orestes  
 known to Iphigenia.

Two parts, then, of the Plot—Reversal of Intention 6 — \*  
and Recognition—turn upon surprises. A third part is  
 the Tragic Incident. The Tragic Incident is a destructive  
 or painful action, such as death on the stage, bodily agony,  
 wounds and the like. *Plot must be in*

XII [The parts of Tragedy which must be treated as  
 elements of the whole, have been already mentioned.  
 We now come to the quantitative parts—the separate  
parts into which Tragedy is divided—namely, Prologue, *Parts of*  
Episode, Exodos, Choric song; this last being divided  
 into Parodos and Stasimon. These are common to all  
 plays: peculiar to some are the songs of actors from the  
 stage and the Commoi.

The Prologos is that entire part of a tragedy which 2  
 precedes the Parodos of the Chorus. The Episode is  
 that entire part of a tragedy which is between complete  
 choric songs. The Exodos is that entire part of a tragedy  
 which has no choric song after it. Of the Choric part  
 the Parodos is the first undivided utterance of the  
 Chorus: the Stasimon is a Choric ode without anapaests  
 or trochaic tetrameters: the Commos is a joint lamenta-  
 tion of Chorus and actors. The parts of Tragedy which 3  
 must be treated as elements of the whole have been

χρήσθαι πρότερον εἵπαμεν, κατὰ δὲ τὸ ποσὸν καὶ εἰς ἃ  
διαιρεῖται κεχωρισμένα ταῦτ' ἐστίν.]

XIII Ὦν δὲ δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι καὶ ἃ δεῖ εὐλαβεῖσθαι συν-  
ιστάνας τοὺς μύθους καὶ πόθεν ἔσται τὸ τῆς τραγωδίας ἔρ-  
30 γον, ἐφεξῆς ἂν εἶη λεκτέον τοῖς νῦν εἰρημένοις. ἐπειδὴ οὖν 2  
δεῖ τὴν σύνθεσιν εἶναι τῆς καλλίστης τραγωδίας μὴ ἀπλὴν  
ἀλλὰ πεπλεγμένην καὶ ταύτην φοβερῶν καὶ ἐλεινῶν εἶναι  
μμητικὴν (τοῦτο γὰρ ἴδιον τῆς τοιαύτης μμησεως ἐστίν),  
πρῶτον μὲν δῆλον ὅτι οὔτε τοὺς ἐπικεικὺς ἄνδρας δεῖ μετα-  
35 βάλλοντας φαίνεσθαι ἐξ εὐτυχίας εἰς δυστυχίαν, οὐ γὰρ  
φοβερὸν οὐδὲ ἐλεινὸν τοῦτο ἀλλὰ μαρὸν ἐστίν· οὔτε τοὺς  
μοχθηροὺς ἐξ ἀτυχίας εἰς εὐτυχίαν, ἀτραγωδότατον γὰρ  
τοῦτ' ἐστὶ πάντων, οὐδὲν γὰρ ἔχει ὧν δεῖ, οὔτε γὰρ φιλόανθρω-  
1453 a πον οὔτε ἐλεινὸν οὔτε φοβερὸν ἐστίν· οὐδ' αὖ τὸν σφόδρα  
πονηρὸν ἐξ εὐτυχίας εἰς δυστυχίαν μεταπίπτειν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ  
φιλόανθρωπον ἔχει ἂν ἡ τοιαύτη σύστασις ἀλλ' οὔτε ἔλεον  
> οὔτε φόβον, ὁ μὲν γὰρ περὶ τὸν ἀνάξιον ἐστὶν δυστυχοῦντα,  
> 5 ὁ δὲ περὶ τὸν ὅμοιον, ἔλεος μὲν περὶ τὸν ἀνάξιον, φόβος δὲ  
περὶ τὸν ὅμοιον, ὥστε οὔτε ἐλεινὸν οὔτε φοβερὸν ἔσται τὸ  
συμβαῖνον. ὁ μεταξὺ ἄρα τούτων λοιπός. ἐστὶ δὲ τοιοῦτος 3  
ὁ μήτε ἀρετῇ διαφέρων καὶ δικαιοσύνη, μήτε διὰ κακίαν  
καὶ μοχθηρίαν μεταβάλλον εἰς τὴν δυστυχίαν ἀλλὰ δι'  
> 10 ἀμαρτίαν τινά, τῶν ἐν μεγάλῃ δόξῃ ὄντων καὶ εὐτυχία,

28. ὧν ἀπογρ. : ὡς A<sup>c</sup> 1453 a l. αὐ τὸν ἀπογρ. : αὐτὸ A<sup>c</sup> 5. ἔλεος  
μὲν . . . τὸν ὅμοιον secl. Ritter (non confirm. Arabs).

already mentioned. The quantitative parts—the separate parts into which it is divided—are here enumerated.]

## XIII

As the sequel to what has already been said, we must proceed to consider what the poet should aim at, and what he should avoid, in constructing his plots; and by what means the specific effect of Tragedy will be produced.

A perfect tragedy should, as we have seen, be arranged not on the simple but on the complex plan. It should, moreover, imitate actions which excite pity and fear, this being the distinctive mark of tragic imitation. It follows plainly, in the first place, that the change of fortune presented must not be the spectacle of a virtuous man brought from prosperity to adversity: for this moves neither pity nor fear; it merely shocks us. Nor, again, that of a bad man passing from adversity to prosperity: for nothing can be more alien to the spirit of Tragedy; it possesses no single tragic quality; it neither satisfies the moral sense, nor calls forth pity or fear. Nor, again, should the downfall of the utter villain be exhibited. A plot of this kind would, doubtless, satisfy the moral sense, but it would inspire neither pity nor fear; for pity is aroused by unmerited misfortune, fear by the misfortune of a man like ourselves. Such an event, therefore, will be neither pitiful nor terrible. There remains, then, the character between these two extremes,—that of a man who is not eminently good and just, yet whose misfortune is brought about not by vice or depravity, but by some error or frailty. He must be one who is highly renowned and prosperous,—a

οιον Οιδίπους καὶ Θυέστης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων γενῶν  
ἐπιφανεῖς ἄνδρες. ἀνάγκη ἄρα τὸν καλῶς ἔχοντα μῦθον 4  
ἀπλοῦν εἶναι μᾶλλον ἢ διπλοῦν, ὥσπερ τινὲς φασι, καὶ μετα-  
βάλλειν οὐκ εἰς εὐτυχίαν ἐκ δυστυχίας ἀλλὰ τούναντίον  
15 ἔξ εὐτυχίας εἰς δυστυχίαν, μὴ διὰ μοχθηρίαν ἀλλὰ δι'  
ἀμαρτίαν μεγάλην ἢ οἴου εἴρηται ἢ βελτίονος μᾶλλον ἢ  
χειρόνος. σημεῖον δὲ καὶ τὸ γιγνόμενον· πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ 5  
οἱ ποιηταὶ τοὺς τυχόντας μύθους ἀπηρίθμουν, νῦν δὲ περὶ  
ὀλίγας οἰκίας αἱ κάλλιστα τραγωδίαὶ συντίθενται, οἶον  
20 περὶ Ἀλκμέωνα καὶ Οιδίπου καὶ Ὀρέστην καὶ Μελέαγρον  
καὶ Θυέστην καὶ Τηλέφον καὶ ὅσοις ἄλλοις συμβέβηκεν  
ἢ παθεῖν δεινὰ ἢ ποιῆσαι. ἢ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὴν τέχνην  
καλλίστη τραγωδία ἐκ ταύτης τῆς συστάσεώς ἐστι. διὸ καὶ 6  
οἱ Εὐριπίδῃ ἐγκαλοῦντες τοῦτ' αὐτὸ ἀμαρτάνουσιν, ὅτι τοῦτο  
25 δρᾶ ἐν ταῖς τραγωδίαις καὶ πολλαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰς δυστυχίαν  
τελευτῶσιν. τοῦτο γὰρ ἐστὶν ὥσπερ εἴρηται ὀρθόν· σημεῖον  
δὲ μέγιστον· ἐπὶ γὰρ τῶν σκηνῶν καὶ τῶν ἀγῶνων τραγι-  
κώταται αἱ τοιαῦται φαίνονται, ἂν κατορθωθῶσιν, καὶ ὁ  
Εὐριπίδης εἰ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα μὴ εὖ οἰκονομεῖ ἀλλὰ τρα-  
30 γικώτατός γε τῶν ποιητῶν φαίνεται. δευτέρα δ' ἢ πρώτη 7  
λεγομένη ὑπὸ τινῶν ἐστὶν [σύστασις] ἢ διπλὴν τε τὴν σύστα-  
σιν ἔχουσα, καθάπερ ἢ Ὀδύσεια, καὶ τελευτῶσα ἔξ ἐναν-  
τίας τοῖς βελτίοσι καὶ χειρόσι. δοκεῖ δὲ εἶναι πρώτη διὰ  
τὴν τῶν θεάτρων ἀσθένειαν· ἀκολουθοῦσι γὰρ οἱ ποιηταὶ  
35 κατ' εὐχὴν ποιοῦντες τοῖς θεαταῖς. ἐστὶν δὲ οὐχ αὕτη 8

11. Οιδίπους apogr.: δίπους A<sup>c</sup> 16. ἢ βελτίονος A<sup>c</sup> 19. κάλλιστα  
secl. Christ: om. Arabs 20. Ἀλκμέωνα Bywater (cf. Meisterhans Gramm.  
Att. Inschr. p. 35): Ἀλκμαίωνα codd. 24. τοῦτ' αὐτὸ Thurot: τὸ αὐτὸ  
codd.: αὐτὸ Bywater: αὐτοὶ Reiz: secl. Margoliouth collato Arabe 25.  
<ai> πολλαὶ Knebel: fort. πολλαὶ <ai> Tyrrell 31. σύστασις secl.  
Twining ἢ] ἢ A<sup>c</sup> 33. βελτίοσι A<sup>c</sup> 34. θεάτρων A<sup>c</sup> et Σ, ut  
videtur (cf. 1449 a 9, Herod. vi. 21 ἐς δάκρυα ἔπεσε τὸ θέητρον, Aristoph.  
Eq. 233 τὸ γὰρ θέατρον δεξιόν): θεατῶν Riccardianus 16.

personage like Oedipus, Thyestes, or other illustrious men of such families. = GR.

A well constructed plot should, therefore, be single in its issue, rather than double as some maintain. The change of fortune should be not from bad to good, but, reversely, from good to bad. It should come about as the result not of vice, but of some great error or frailty, in a character either such as we have described, or better rather than worse. The practice of the stage bears out our view. At first the poets recounted any legend that came in their way. Now, the best tragedies are founded on the story of a few houses,—on the fortunes of Alcmaeon, Oedipus, Orestes, Meleager, Thyestes, Telephus, and those others who have done or suffered something terrible. A tragedy, then, to be perfect according to the rules of art should be of this construction. Hence they are in error who censure Euripides just because he follows this principle in his plays, many of which end unhappily. It is, as we have said, the right ending. The best proof is that on the stage and in dramatic competition, such plays, if well worked out, are the most tragic in effect; and Euripides, faulty though he may be in the general management of his subject, yet is felt to be the most tragic of the poets. — EUC.

In the second rank comes the kind of tragedy which some place first. Like the Odyssey, it has a double thread of plot, and also an opposite catastrophe for the good and for the bad. It is accounted the best because of the weakness of the spectators; for the poet is guided in what he writes by the wishes of his audience. The pleasure, however, thence derived is not the true tragic



<η> ἀπὸ τραγωδίας ἡδονὴ ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον τῆς κωμωδίας οἰκεία·  
ἐκεῖ γὰρ οἱ ἂν ἐχθιστοὶ ὦσιν ἐν τῷ μύθῳ, οἷον Ὀρέστης  
καὶ Αἴγισθος, φίλοι γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τελευτῆς ἐξέρχονται  
καὶ ἀποθνήσκει οὐδεὶς ὑπ' οὐδενός.

XIV  
1453 b

Ἔστιν μὲν οὖν τὸ φοβερὸν καὶ ἔλαειν ἐκ τῆς ὄψεως γί-  
γνεσθαι, ἔστιν δὲ καὶ ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς συστάσεως τῶν πραγμάτων,  
ὅπερ ἐστὶ πρότερον καὶ ποιητοῦ ἀμείνουσος. δεῖ γὰρ καὶ ἄνευ  
τοῦ ὄραν οὕτω συνεστάναι τὸν μῦθον, ὥστε τὸν ἀκούοντα τὰ  
5 πρᾶγματα γινόμενα καὶ φρίττειν καὶ ἔλαειν ἐκ τῶν συμβαινόν-  
των· ἅπερ ἂν πάθοι τις ἀκούων τὸν τοῦ Οἰδίπου μῦθον.  
τὸ δὲ διὰ τῆς ὄψεως τοῦτο παρασκευάζειν ἀτεχνό-2  
τερον καὶ χορηγίας δεόμενόν ἐστιν. οἱ δὲ μὴ τὸ φοβε-  
ρὸν διὰ τῆς ὄψεως ἀλλὰ τὸ τερατώδες μόνον παρασκευά-  
10 ζοντες οὐδὲν τραγωδία κοινωνοῦσιν· οὐ γὰρ πᾶσαν δεῖ  
ζητεῖν ἡδονὴν ἀπὸ τραγωδίας ἀλλὰ τὴν οἰκείαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ 3  
τὴν ἀπὸ ἐλέου καὶ φόβου διὰ μιμήσεως δεῖ ἡδονὴν παρα-  
σκευάζειν τὸν ποιητὴν, φανερόν ὡς τοῦτο ἐν τοῖς πράγμα-  
σιν ἐμποιητέον. ποῖα οὖν δεινὰ ἢ ποῖα οἰκτρὰ φαίνεται  
15 τῶν συμπιπτόντων, λάβωμεν. ἀνάγκη δὲ ἢ φίλων εἶναι 4  
πρὸς ἀλλήλους τὰς τοιαύτας πράξεις ἢ ἐχθρῶν ἢ μηδε-  
τέρων. ἂν μὲν οὖν ἐχθρὸς ἐχθρόν, οὐδὲν ἔλαειν, οὔτε  
ποιῶν οὔτε μέλλων, πλὴν κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ πάθος· οὐδ' ἂν  
μηδετέρως ἔχοντες· ὅταν δ' ἐν ταῖς φιλίαις ἐγγίνηται τὰ

36. <η> conl. Vahlen  
1453 b 4. συνεστάναι A<sup>c</sup>  
δὴ Spengel: δὲ codd.

37. οἱ ἂν Bonitz: ἂν οἱ codd.: κἂν οἱ Spengel  
7. ἀτεχνότερον apogr.: ἀτεχνώτερον A<sup>c</sup> 15.  
17. post ἐχθρόν add. ἀποκτείνῃ Pazzi <φοβερόν>

οὐδ' ἔλαειν Ueberweg

pleasure. It is proper rather to Comedy, where those who, in the piece, are the deadliest enemies—like Orestes and Aegisthus—quit the stage as friends at the close, and no one slays or is slain.

XIV  
1453 b

Fear and pity may be aroused by spectacular means; but they may also result from the inner structure of the piece, which is the better way, and indicates a superior poet. For the plot ought to be so constructed that, even without the aid of the eye, he who hears the tale told will thrill with horror and melt to pity at what takes place. This is the impression we should receive from hearing the story of the Oedipus. But to produce this effect by the mere spectacle is a less artistic method, and dependent on extraneous aids. Those who employ spectacular means to create a sense not of the terrible, but only of the monstrous, are strangers to the purpose of Tragedy; for we must not demand of Tragedy any and every kind of pleasure, but only that which is proper to it." And since the pleasure which the poet should afford is that which comes from pity and fear through imitation, it is evident that this quality must be impressed upon the incidents.

Let us then determine what are the circumstances which strike us as terrible or pitiful.

Actions capable of this effect must happen between persons who are either friends or enemies or indifferent to one another. If an enemy kills an enemy, there is nothing to excite pity either in the act or the intention, —except so far as the suffering in itself is pitiful. So gain with indifferent persons. But when the tragic incident occurs between those who are near or dear to

20 πάθη, οἷον εἰ ἀδελφὸς ἀδελφὸν ἢ υἱὸς πατέρα ἢ μήτηρ  
 υἱὸν ἢ υἱὸς μητέρα ἀποκτείνει ἢ μέλλει ἢ τι ἄλλο τοιοῦτον  
 δρᾶ, ταῦτα ζητητέον. τοὺς μὲν οὖν παρειλημμένους μύθους 5  
 λύειν οὐκ ἔστιν, λέγω δὲ οἷον τὴν Κλυταιμῆστραν ἀποθα-  
 νούσαν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ὀρέστου καὶ τὴν Ἐριφύλην ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀλκμέ-  
 25 νου, αὐτὸν δὲ εὐρίσκειν δεῖ καὶ τοῖς παραδεδομένοις χρή-  
 σθαι καλῶς. τὸ δὲ καλῶς τί λέγομεν, εἴπωμεν σαφέστερον.  
 ἔστι μὲν γὰρ οὕτω γίνεσθαι τὴν πρᾶξιν, ὥσπερ οἱ παλαιοὶ 6  
 ἐποιοῦν εἰδότας καὶ γινώσκοντας, καθάπερ καὶ Εὐριπίδης  
 ἐποίησεν ἀποκτείνουσαν τοὺς παῖδας τὴν Μήδειαν· ἔστιν δὲ  
 30 πρᾶξαι μὲν, ἀγνοοῦντας δὲ πρᾶξαι τὸ δεινόν, εἰθ' ὕστερον  
 ἀναγνωρίσαι τὴν φιλίαν, ὥσπερ ὁ Σοφοκλέους Οἰδίπους· τοῦ-  
 το μὲν οὖν ἔξω τοῦ δράματος, ἐν δ' αὐτῇ τῇ τραγωδίᾳ οἷον  
 ὁ Ἀλκμέων ὁ Ἀστυδάμαντος ἢ ὁ Τηλέγονος ὁ ἐν τῷ τραυ-  
 ματίᾳ Ὀδυσσεῖ. ἔτι δὲ τρίτον παρὰ ταῦτα \* \* τὸ μέλλον- 7  
 35 τα ποιεῖν τι τῶν ἀνηκέστων δι' ἀγνοίαν ἀναγνωρίσαι πρὶν  
 ποιῆσαι. καὶ παρὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλως. ἢ γὰρ πρᾶξαι  
 ἀνάγκη ἢ μὴ καὶ εἰδότας ἢ μὴ εἰδότας. τούτων δὲ τὸ μὲν  
 γινώσκοντα μελλῆσαι καὶ μὴ πρᾶξαι χεῖριστον· τό τε γὰρ  
 μιᾶρὸν ἔχει, καὶ οὐ τραγικόν· ἀπαθὲς γάρ. διόπερ οὐδεὶς  
 1454 a ποιεῖ ὁμοίως, εἰ μὴ ὀλιγάκις, οἷον ἐν Ἀντιγόῃ τὸν Κρέοντα  
 ὁ Αἴμων. τὸ δὲ πρᾶξαι δεύτερον. βέλτιον δὲ τὸ ἀγνοοῦντα 8

20. οἷον εἰ Sylburg: οἷον ἢ codd.

22. δρᾶ ἀρογρ.: δρᾶν A<sup>c</sup>

Κλυταιμῆστραν Σ: Κλυταιμῆστραν codd.

24. Ἀλκμαίωνος codd.

εἴπωμεν ἀρογρ.: εἴπωμεν A<sup>c</sup>

33. Ἀλκμαίων ὁ Gryphius: Ἀλκμαία

34. παρὰ ταῦτα, &lt;τὸ μελλῆσαι γινώσκοντα καὶ μὴ ποιῆσαι, καὶ τέταρτον&gt; con

Vahlen τὸ Bonitz: τὸν codd.

1454 a 2. δεύτερον] κράτιστον Ne

hardt, recte, ut opinor

one another—if, for example, a brother kills, or intends to kill, a brother, a son his father, a mother her son, a son his mother, or any other deed of the kind is done—these are the situations to be looked for by the poet. He may not indeed destroy the framework of the received legends—the fact, for instance, that Clytemnestra was slain by Orestes and Eriphyle by Alcmaeon—but he ought to show invention of his own, and skilfully handle the traditional material. Let us explain more clearly what is meant by skilful handling.

The action may be done consciously and with knowledge of the persons, in the manner of the older poets. It is thus too that Euripides makes Medea slay her children. Or, again, the deed of horror may be done, but done in ignorance, and the tie of kinship or friendship be discovered afterwards. The Oedipus of Sophocles is an example. Here, indeed, the incident is outside the drama proper; but cases occur where it falls within the action of the play: one may cite the Alcmaeon of Astydamas, or Telegonus in the Wounded Odysseus. Again, there is a third case,—to be about to act with knowledge of the persons and then not to act. The fourth case is—when some one is about to do an irreparable deed through ignorance, and makes the discovery before it is done. These are the only possible ways. For the deed must either be done or not done,—and that wittingly or unwittingly. But of all these ways, to be about to act knowing the persons, and then not to act, is the worst. It is shocking without being tragic, for no disaster follows. It is, therefore, never, or very rarely, found in poetry. One instance, however, is in the Antigone, where Haemon threatens to kill Creon. The next and better way is that the deed

μὲν πρᾶξι, πράξαντα δὲ ἀναγνώρισαι· τό τε γὰρ μιὰρὸν  
 οὐ πρόσεστιν καὶ ἡ ἀναγνώρισις ἐκπληκτικόν. κράτιστον δὲ 9  
 5 τὸ τελευταῖον, λέγω δὲ οἶον ἐν τῷ Κρεσφόντῃ ἢ Μερόπῃ  
 μέλλει τὸν υἱὸν ἀποκτείνειν, ἀποκτείνει δὲ οὐ, ἀλλ' ἀν-  
 6 ἐγνώρισε, καὶ ἐν τῇ Ἰφιγενείᾳ ἢ ἀδελφῇ τὸν ἀδελφόν, καὶ  
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλῃ ὁ υἱὸς τὴν μητέρα ἐκδιδόναι μέλλων ἀνεγνώ-  
 ρισεν. διὰ γὰρ τοῦτο, ὅπερ πάλαι εἴρηται, οὐ περὶ πολλὰ  
 10 γένη αἱ τραγῳδαίαι εἰσίν. ζητοῦντες γὰρ οὐκ ἀπὸ τέχνης  
 ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τύχης εὖρον τὸ τοιοῦτον παρασκευάζειν ἐν τοῖς  
 μύθοις· ἀναγκάζονται οὖν ἐπὶ ταύτας τὰς οἰκίας ἀπαντᾶν  
 ὅσαις τὰ τοιαῦτα συμβέβηκε πάθῃ. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς  
 τῶν πραγμάτων συστάσεως καὶ ποίους τινὰς εἶναι δεῖ τοὺς  
 15 μύθους εἴρηται ἱκανῶς.

XV Περὶ δὲ τὰ ἦθη τέτταρά ἐστιν ὧν δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι, ἐν  
 μὲν καὶ πρῶτον ὅπως χρηστὰ ἦ. ἔξει δὲ ἦθος μὲν ἐὰν  
 ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη ποιῆ φανερόν ὁ λόγος ἢ ἡ πρᾶξις προαίρεσίν  
 τινα, χρηστὸν δὲ ἐὰν χρηστήν. ἔστιν δὲ ἐν ἐκάστῳ  
 20 γένει· καὶ γὰρ γυνή ἐστιν χρηστή καὶ δούλος, καίτοι  
 γε ἴσως τούτων τὸ μὲν χεῖρον, τὸ δὲ ὄλως φαῦλον  
 ἐστιν. δεύτερον δὲ τὸ ἀρμόττοντα· ἔστιν γὰρ ἀνδρεῖον 2  
 μὲν τι ἦθος, ἀλλ' οὐχ ἀρμόττον γυναικὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον ἢ  
 δευνῆν εἶναι. τρίτον δὲ τὸ ὅμοιον. τοῦτο γὰρ ἕτερον τοῦ 3

4. κράτιστον] δεύτερον Neidhardt, recte, ut opinor Valokenaer 18. φανερόν Ald., Bekker 19. τινα Parisinus 2038 :  
 τινὰ ἢ A<sup>o</sup> : τινα <ἢ τις ἀν> ἢ conl. Vahlen (? cf. Arab.) : <ἦν>τινα <δ>ἢ  
 Bywater : τινα ἢ <φυγῆν> Düntzer : τινα <έχοντα, ὅποια τις ἀν> ἢ  
 Gomperz : τινα, φαῦλον μὲν ἐὰν φαῦλη ἢ apogr. 22. τὸ Vahlen (ed. 1) :  
 τὰ codd. 23. τι ἦθος Hermann : τὸ ἦθος codd. τὸ apogr. : \* \* τῶι  
 A<sup>o</sup> : οὕτως Vahlen collato Pol. iii. 4. 1277 b 20. Desunt in Arabe verba  
 τῷ ἀνδρεῖαν . . . εἶναι, quorum vicem supplet haec clausula, 'ne ut appareat  
 quidem in ea omnino' (Margoliouth); unde Diels τῷ ἀνδρεῖαν . . . εἶναι  
 glossema esse arbitratus quod veram lectionem eiecerit, scribendum esse conl.

should be perpetrated. Still better, that it should be  
perpetrated in ignorance, and the discovery made after-  
wards. There is then nothing to shock us, while the  
 discovery produces a startling effect. The last case is the  
 best, as when in the Cresphontes Merope is about to slay  
 her son, but, recognising who he is, spares his life. So  
 in the Iphigenia, the sister recognises the brother just in  
 time. Again in the Helle, the son recognises the mother  
 when on the point of giving her up. This, then, is why  
 a few families only, as has been already observed, furnish  
 the subjects of tragedy. It was not art, but happy  
 chance, that led poets to look for such situations and so  
 impress the tragic quality upon their plots. They are  
 compelled, therefore, to have recourse to those houses  
 whose history contains moving incidents like these.

Enough has now been said concerning the structure of the incidents, and the proper constitution of the plot.

XV\* In respect of Character there are four things to be  
aimed at. First, and most important, it must be good. 1.  
 Now any speech or action that manifests moral purpose of any kind will be expressive of character: the character will be good if the purpose is good. This rule is relative to each class. Even a woman may be good, and also a slave; though the woman may be said to be an inferior being, and the slave quite worthless. The second thing 2  
to aim at is propriety. There is a type of manly valour; but valour in a woman, or unscrupulous cleverness, is inappropriate. Thirdly, character must be true to life: for 3

25 χρηστὸν τὸ ἦθος καὶ ἀρμόττον ποιῆσαι ὥσπερ εἴρηται.  
 τέταρτον δὲ τὸ ὀμαλόν. κἂν γὰρ ἀνώμαλός τις ἢ ὁ τὴν 4  
 μίμησιν παρέχων καὶ τοιοῦτον ἦθος ὑποτιθείς, ὁμῶς ὀμα-  
 λῶς ἀνώμαλον δεῖ εἶναι. ἔστιν δὲ παράδειγμα πονηρίας μὲν 5  
 ἦθους μὴ ἀναγκαίου οἶον ὁ Μενέλαος ὁ ἐν τῷ Ὀρέστη, τοῦ  
 30 δὲ ἀπρεποῦς καὶ μὴ ἀρμόττουτος ὃ τε θρήνος Ὀδυσσέως ἐν  
 τῇ Σκύλλῃ καὶ ἡ τῆς Μελανίππης ῥήσις, τοῦ δὲ ἀνωμάλου  
 ἢ ἐν Αὐλίδι Ἰφιγένεια· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἔοικεν ἢ ἰκετεύουσα τῇ  
 ὑστέρᾳ. χρῆ δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἠθεσιν ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν τῇ τῶν 6  
 πραγμάτων συστάσει αἰεὶ ζητεῖν ἢ τὸ ἀναγκαῖον ἢ τὸ εἰκός,  
 35 ὥστε τὸν τοιοῦτον τὰ τοιαῦτα λέγειν ἢ πράττειν ἢ ἀναγκαῖον  
 ἢ εἰκός, καὶ τοῦτο μετὰ τοῦτο γίνεσθαι ἢ ἀναγκαῖον ἢ εἰκός.  
 φανερόν οὖν ὅτι καὶ τὰς λύσεις τῶν μύθων ἐξ αὐτοῦ δεῖ τοῦ 7  
 1454 b μύθου συμβαίνειν, καὶ μὴ ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Μηδείᾳ ἀπὸ μη-  
 χανῆς καὶ ἐν τῇ Ἰλιάδι τὰ περὶ τὸν ἀπόπλου· ἀλλὰ μη-  
 χανῆ χρηστέον ἐπὶ τὰ ἔξω τοῦ δράματος, ἢ ὅσα πρὸ τοῦ  
 γέγονεν ἂ οὐχ οἶόν τε ἄνθρωπον εἰδέναί, ἢ ὅσα ὑστερον, ἂ  
 5 δεῖται προαγορεύσεως καὶ ἀγγελίας· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀποδί-

ὥστε μὴδὲ φαίνεσθαι καθόλου: 'The manly character is indeed sometimes found even in a woman (ἔστιν γὰρ ἀνδρείον μὲν τὸ ἦθος), but it is not appropriate to her, so that it never appears as a general characteristic of the sex.' Sed hoc aliter dicendum fuisse suspicari licet; itaque Susemihl huiusmodi aliquid tentavit, ὥστε μὴδὲ φαίνεσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ ὡς ἐπίπαν, vel ὡς ἐπίπαν εἰπεῖν: 'There is indeed a character (τι ἦθος) of manly courage, but it is not appropriate to a woman, and as a rule is not found in her at all' 25. lacunam ante ὥσπερ statuit Spengel ὥσπερ εἴρηται fort. secludendum: ἀπερ εἴρηται Hermann 29. ἀναγκαίου Marcianus 215, Bywater: ἀναγκαῖον A<sup>c</sup>: ἀναγκαίας Thurot οἶον secl. E. Müller 30. <ὁ> Ὀδυσσέως Tucker: <τοῦ> Ὀδυσσέως Bywater 31. Σκύλλῃ τῇ θαλαττίᾳ Σ, ut videtur post ῥήσις exemplum τοῦ ἀνομοίου intercidisse conii. Vettori 35 et 36. ἢ Hermann: ἢ codd. 36. <ὡς> καὶ τοῦτο Bywater, fort. recte 37. τῶν μύθων] τῶν ἠθῶν Σ, ut videtur 1454 b 2. ἀπόπλου Riccardianus 16: ἀνάπλου Parisinus 2038, Σ, ut videtur: ἀπλοῦν A<sup>c</sup> 3. ἐπὶ τὰ apogr.: ἔπειτα A<sup>c</sup> 4. οἶόν τε apogr.: οἶόντα A<sup>c</sup> commate post ὑστερον distinguit W. R. Hardie, qui ἀγγελίας ad ὅσα πρὸ τοῦ refert, προαγορεύσεως ad ὅσα ὑστερον

this is a distinct thing from goodness and propriety, as here described. The fourth point is consistency: for though 4 4.  
 the subject of the imitation, who suggested the type, be inconsistent, still he must be consistently inconsistent. As an example of motiveless degradation of character, we 5 have Menelaus in the Orestes: of character indecorous -p and inappropriate, the lament of Odysseus in the Scylla, -p and the speech of Melanippe: of inconsistency, the -p Iphigenia at Aulis,—for Iphigenia the suppliant in no -p way resembles her later self.

As in the structure of the plot, so too in the por- 6 traiture of character, the poet should always aim either at the necessary or the probable. Thus a person of a given character should speak or act in a given way, by the rule either of necessity or of probability; just as this event should follow that by necessary or probable 7 sequence. It is therefore evident that the unravelling of the plot, no less than the complication, must arise out 1454 b of the plot itself, it must not be brought about by the *Deus ex Machina*—as in the Medea, or in the Return of -p the Greeks in the Iliad. The *Deus ex Machina* should -p be employed only for events external to the drama,—for antecedent or subsequent events, which lie beyond the range of human knowledge, and which require to be



δομεν τοῖς θεοῖς ὄραν. ἄλογον δὲ μηδὲν εἶναι ἐν τοῖς πρᾶ-  
 γμασιν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἔξω τῆς τραγωδίας, οἷον τὸ ἐν τῷ  
 Οἰδίποδι τῷ Σοφοκλέους. ἐπεὶ δὲ μίμησις ἐστὶν ἡ τραγω- 8  
 δία βελτιόνων <ἢ καθ' > ἡμᾶς, δεῖ μιμῆσθαι τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς  
 10 εἰκονογράφους· καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι ἀποδιδόντες τὴν ἰδίαν μορφήν  
 ὁμοίους ποιοῦντες καλλίους γράφουσιν· οὕτω καὶ τὸν ποιητὴν  
 μιμούμενον καὶ ὀργίλους καὶ ῥαθύμους καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα  
 ἔχοντας ἐπὶ τῶν ἡθῶν, τοιούτους ὄντας ἐπιεικεῖς ποιεῖν  
 [παράδειγμα σκληρότητος], οἷον τὸν Ἀχιλλέα Ἀγάθων καὶ  
 15 Ὀμηρος. ταῦτα δὲ <δεῖ> διατηρεῖν καὶ πρὸς τούτοις τὰς 9  
 παρὰ τὰ ἔξ ἀνάγκης ἀκολουθούσας αἰσθήσεις τῇ ποιητικῇ·  
 καὶ γὰρ κατ' αὐτὰς ἐστὶν ἀμαρτάνειν πολλάκις· εἴρηται  
 δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν ἐν τοῖς ἐκδεδομένοις λόγοις ἰκανῶς.

XVI Ἀναγνώρισις δὲ τί μὲν ἐστὶν, εἴρηται πρότερον· εἶδη  
 20 δὲ ἀναγνωρίσεως, πρώτη μὲν ἡ ἀτεχνοτάτη καὶ ἡ πλείστη  
 χρῶνται δι' ἀπορίαν, ἡ διὰ τῶν σημείων. τούτων δὲ τὰ μὲν 2  
 σύμφυτα, οἷον “λόγχην ἣν φοροῦσι Γηγενεῖς” ἢ ἀστέρας  
 οἷους ἐν τῷ Θυέστη Καρκίνος, τὰ δὲ ἐπίκτητα, καὶ τούτων  
 τὰ μὲν ἐν τῷ σώματι, οἷον οὐλαί, τὰ δὲ ἐκτός, τὰ περι-  
 25 δέραια καὶ οἷον ἐν τῇ Τυροῖ διὰ τῆς σκάφης. ἐστὶν δὲ καὶ  
 τούτοις χρῆσθαι ἢ βέλτιον ἢ χεῖρον, οἷον Ὀδυσσεὺς διὰ 3  
 τῆς οὐλῆς ἄλλως ἀνεγνωρίσθη ὑπὸ τῆς τροφοῦ καὶ ἄλλως

7. τὸ A<sup>c</sup> (? τω pr. A<sup>c</sup>) : τὸ vel τῷ apogr. : τὰ Ald. 9. ἢ καθ' add. Stahr  
 (confirm. Arabs) 14. παράδειγμα σκληρότητος secl. Bywater : οἷον ante  
 παράδειγμα ponit Tucker ἀγάθων apogr. : ἀγαθῶν A<sup>c</sup> 15. δεῖ δεῖ Ald. :  
 δεῖ A<sup>c</sup> : δεῖ apogr. τὰς παρὰ τὰ vel τὰ παρὰ τὰς apogr. : τὰς παρὰ τὰς  
 A<sup>c</sup> 20. ἡ πλείστη apogr. : ἡ πλείστη A<sup>c</sup> 21. ἡ apogr. : ἡ A<sup>c</sup> 22.  
 ἀστέρες Richards 24. περιδέραια apogr. pauca : περιδέραια A<sup>c</sup> 25. οἷον  
 apogr. : οἷον A<sup>c</sup> σκάφης] σπάθης Σ, ut videtur, 'ensis' Arabs : (R. Ellis)  
 26. <ὁ> Ὀδυσσεὺς Bywater

reported or foretold; for to the gods we ascribe the power of seeing all things. Within the action there must be nothing irrational. If the irrational cannot be excluded, it should be outside the scope of the tragedy. Such is the irrational element in the Oedipus of Sophocles.

Again, since Tragedy is an imitation of persons who are above the common level, the example of good portrait-painters should be followed. They, while reproducing the distinctive form of the original, make a likeness which is true to life and yet more beautiful. So too the poet, in representing men who are irascible or indolent, or have other defects of character, should preserve the type and yet ennoble it. In this way Achilles is portrayed by Agathon and Homer.

These then are rules the poet should observe. Nor should he neglect those appeals to the senses, which, though not among the essentials, are the concomitants of poetry; for here too there is much room for error. But of this enough has been said in the published treatises.

What Recognition is has been already explained. We will now enumerate its kinds.

First, the least artistic form, which, from poverty of wit, is most commonly employed—recognition by signs. Of these some are congenital,—such as 'the spear which the earth-born race bear on their bodies,' or the stars introduced by Carcinus in his Thyestes. Others are acquired after birth; and of these some are bodily marks, as scars; some external tokens, as necklaces, or the little ark in the Tyro by which the discovery is effected. Even these admit of more or less skilful treatment. Thus in the recognition of Odysseus by his scar, the discovery is

ὑπὸ τῶν συβοτῶν· εἰσὶ γὰρ αἱ μὲν πίστεως ἕνεκα ἀτεχνο-  
 30 τεραι, καὶ αἱ τοιαῦται πᾶσαι, αἱ δὲ ἐκ περιπετείας, ὡς-  
 περ ἡ ἐν τοῖς Νίπτροις, βελτίους. δεύτεραι δὲ αἱ πεποιοη- 4  
 μέναι ὑπὸ τοῦ ποιητοῦ, διὸ ἄτεχνοι. οἶον Ὀρέστης ἐν τῇ  
 Ἴφιγενείᾳ ἀνεγνώρισεν ὅτι Ὀρέστης· ἐκείνη μὲν γὰρ διὰ τῆς  
 ἐπιστολῆς, ἐκείνος δὲ αὐτὸς λέγει ἃ βούλεται ὁ ποιητὴς ἀλλ'  
 35 οὐχ ὁ μῦθος· διὸ ἐγγύς τι τῆς εἰρημένης ἀμαρτίας ἐστίν, ἐξῆν  
 γὰρ ἂν ἔνια καὶ ἐνεγκεῖν. καὶ ἐν τῷ Σοφοκλέους Τηρεῖ ἡ  
 τῆς κερκίδος φωνή. ἡ τρίτη διὰ μνήμης, τῷ αἰσθῆσθαι 5  
 1455 a τι ἰδόντα, ὡσπερ ἡ ἐν Κυπρίοις τοῖς Δικαιογένοισι, ἰδὼν γὰρ  
 τὴν γραφὴν ἔκλαυσεν, καὶ ἡ ἐν Ἀλκίνοιο ἀπολόγῳ, ἀκούων  
 γὰρ τοῦ κιθαριστοῦ καὶ μνησθεῖς ἐδάκρυσεν, ὅθεν ἀνεγνω-  
 ρίσθησαν. τετάρτη δὲ ἡ ἐκ συλλογισμοῦ, οἶον ἐν Χοηφόροις, 6  
 5 ὅτι ὁμοίος τις ἐλήλυθεν, ὁμοίος δὲ οὐθεὶς ἀλλ' ἡ ὁ Ὀρέστης,  
 οὗτος ἄρα ἐλήλυθεν. καὶ ἡ Πολυίδου τοῦ σοφιστοῦ περὶ τῆς  
 Ἴφιγενείας· εἰκὸς γὰρ τὸν Ὀρέστην συλλογίσασθαι ὅτι ἢ τ'  
 ἀδελφῇ ἐτύθη καὶ αὐτῷ συμβαίνει θύεσθαι. καὶ ἐν τῷ  
 Θεοδέκτου Τυδεῖ, ὅτι ἐλθὼν ὡς εὐρήσων υἱὸν αὐτὸς ἀπόλ-  
 10 λυται. καὶ ἡ ἐν τοῖς Φινεΐδασι. ἰδοῦσαι γὰρ τὸν τόπον συν-  
 ελογίσαντο τὴν εἰμαρμένην ὅτι ἐν τούτῳ εἴμαρτο ἀποθανεῖν

31. οἶον <ὁ> Bywater Ὀρέστης prius secl. Diels (confirmante fort. Arabe) 32. ἀνεγνωρίσθη Spengel 34. διὸ ἐγγύς τι Vahlen: δι' ὅτι ἐγγύς A<sup>c</sup>: διὸ τι ἐγγύς Bywater 36. alia Σ legisse videtur, 'haec sunt in eo quod dixit Sophocles se audiisse vocem radii contempti' (Arabs); unde W. R. Hardie conl. τοιαύτη δ' ἡ ἐν τῷ [Σοφοκλέους?] Τηρεῖ "τῆς ἀναύτου," φησί, "κερκίδος φωνὴν κλύω" 37. ἡ τρίτη Spengel: ἦτοι τῆ A<sup>c</sup>: τρίτη ἡ ἀπογρ. αἰσθῆσθαι A<sup>c</sup> 1455 a 1. τοῖς ἀπογρ.: τῆς A<sup>c</sup> 2. ἀπολόγῳ ἀπογρ.: ἀπὸ λόγων A<sup>c</sup> 4. Χοηφόροις Vettori: χλοηφόροις A<sup>c</sup> 6. Πολυίδου Tyrwhitt: πολυείδου ἀπογρ.: πολυείδους A<sup>c</sup> 10. Φινεΐδασι Reiz: φινεΐδασι codd.

NEAPS

made in one way by the nurse, in another by the herdsmen. The use of tokens for the express purpose of proof—and, indeed, any formal proof with or without tokens—is a less artistic mode of recognition. A better kind is that which comes about by a turn of incident, as in the Bath Scene in the *Odyssey*.

Next come the recognitions invented at will by the poet, and on that account wanting in art. For example, Orestes in the *Iphigenia* reveals the fact that he is Orestes. She, indeed, makes herself known by the letter; but he, by speaking himself, and saying what the poet, not what the plot requires. This, therefore, is nearly allied to the fault above mentioned:—for Orestes might as well have brought tokens with him. Another similar instance is the 'voice of the shuttle' in the *Tereus* of Sophocles.

1455 a The third kind depends on memory when the sight of some object awakens a feeling: as in the *Cyprians* of Dicaeogenes, where the hero breaks into tears on seeing the picture; or again in the 'Lay of Alcinous,' where Odysseus, hearing the minstrel play the lyre, recalls the past and weeps; and hence the recognition.

The fourth kind is by process of reasoning. Thus in the *Choëphori*:—'Some one resembling me has come: no one resembles me but Orestes: therefore Orestes has come.' Such too is the discovery made by Iphigenia in the play of Polyidus the Sophist. It was a natural reflexion for Orestes to make, 'So I too must die at the altar like my sister.' So, again, in the *Tydeus* of Theodectes, the father says, 'I came to find my son, and I lose my own life.' So too in the *Phineidae*: the

αὐταῖς, καὶ γὰρ ἐξετέθησαν ἐνταῦθα. ἔστιν δέ τις καὶ συν- 7  
 θετὴ ἐκ παραλογισμοῦ τοῦ θατέρου, οἷον ἐν τῷ Ὀδυσσεὶ τῷ  
 ψευδαγγέλῳ· ὁ μὲν γὰρ τὸ τόξον ἔφη \* \* \* γινώσσεσθαι ὃ  
 15 οὐχ ἑωράκει, τὸ δὲ ὡς δὴ ἐκείνου ἀναγνωριούντος διὰ τούτου  
 ποιῆσαι, παραλογισμός. πασῶν δὲ βελτίστη ἀναγνώρισις ἢ ἐξ 8  
 αὐτῶν τῶν πραγμάτων τῆς ἐκπλήξεως γιγνομένης δι' εἰκό-  
 των, οἷον [ὁ] ἐν τῷ Σοφοκλέους Οἰδίποδι καὶ τῇ Ἴφιγενείᾳ·  
 εἰκὸς γὰρ βούλεσθαι ἐπιθεῖναι γράμματα. αἶ γὰρ τοιαῦται  
 20 μόναι ἄνευ τῶν πεποιημένων σημείων καὶ δεραίων. δεύ-  
 τεραι δὲ αἶ ἐκ συλλογισμοῦ.

XVII Δεῖ δὲ τοὺς μύθους συνιστάναι καὶ τῇ λέξει συναπ-  
 εργάζεσθαι ὅτι μάλιστα πρὸ ὀμμάτων τιθέμενον· οὕτω γὰρ  
 ἂν ἐναργέστατα [ὁ] ὀρῶν ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς γιγνόμενος τοῖς  
 25 πραττομένοις εὐρίσκοι τὸ πρέπον καὶ ἥκιστα ἂν λανθάνοι  
 τὰ ὑπεναντία. σημεῖον δὲ τούτου ὃ ἐπετιμᾶτο Καρκίνῳ·  
 ὁ γὰρ Ἀμφιάραος ἐξ ἱεροῦ ἀνῆει, ὃ μὴ ὀρῶντα [τὸν  
 θεατὴν] ἐλάνθανεν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς σκηνῆς ἐξέπεσεν δυσχερα-  
 νάντων τοῦτο τῶν θεατῶν. ὅσα δὲ δυνατὸν καὶ τοῖς σχή-  
 30 μασιν συναπεργαζόμενον. πιθανώτατοι γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς 2

13. θατέρου Bursian, praeunte Hermann: θεάτρον codd. 14-16. ὁ μὲν γὰρ . . . παραλογισμός] multo plura hic legisse videtur Arabs (Margoliouth); post ἔφη lacunam indicavi; vide quae supra in versione addidi, Arabem quoad potui secutus 14. ὁ μὲν apogr.: τὸ μὲν A<sup>c</sup> τὸ ante τόξον om. apogr. 15. δὴ Tyrwhitt: δι' codd. 16. ποιῆσαι codd.: ἐποίησε Ald. παραλογισμός Vahlen (confirm. Arabs): παραλογισμόν codd. 17. ἐκπλήξεως apogr.: πλήξεως A<sup>c</sup> τῆς ἐκπλήξεως . . . εἰκόντων om. Arabs εἰκόντων A<sup>c</sup> 18. ὁ secl. Vahlen: τὸ Bywater: ὁ Tucker: ἢ apogr. pauca 19-20. αἶ γὰρ τοιαῦται . . . περιδεραιῶν secl. Gomperz 20. δεραίων apogr. corr.: δέρεων A<sup>c</sup>: περιδεραιῶν apogr. pauca σημείων καὶ δεραίων secl. Tucker, fort. recte 24. ἐναργέστατα apogr.: ἐνεργέστατα A<sup>c</sup> ὁ om. Ald. 26. τὸ ante τὰ add. A<sup>c</sup>: om. apogr. ἐπετιμᾶτο marg. Riccardiani 16: ἐπιτιμᾶ τῷ A<sup>c</sup> (cf. 1462 a 10) 27. ἀνῆει Guelferbytanus: ἂν εἶη A<sup>c</sup> ὀρῶντα codd.: ὀρῶντ' ἂν Vahlen 27-28. τὸν θεατὴν secl. (simili errore Rhet. i. 2, 1358 a 8 τοὺς ἀκροατὰς in textum irrepit): τὸν ποιητὴν Dacier μὴ ὀρῶντ' αὐτὸν [θεατὴν] Gomperz, emendationis meae, credo, inscius 30. ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς codd. (confirmare videtur Arabs): ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῆς Tyrwhitt

women, on seeing the place, inferred their fate:—'Here we are doomed to die, for here we were cast forth.' Again, there is a composite kind of recognition involving 7 false inference on the part of one of the characters, as in the *Odysseus Disguised as a Messenger*. A said <that no one else was able to bend the bow; . . . hence B (the disguised *Odysseus*) imagined that A would > recognise the bow which, in fact, he had not seen; and to bring about a recognition by this means—the expectation that A would recognise the bow—is false inference.

~~But, of all recognitions, the best is that which arises from the incidents themselves, where the startling discovery is made by natural means. Such is that in the *Oedipus of Sophocles*, and in the *Iphigenia*; for it was ~~natural~~ that *Iphigenia* should wish to dispatch a letter. These recognitions alone dispense with the artificial aid of tokens or amulets. Next come the recognitions by process of reasoning.~~

XVII In constructing the plot and working it out with the proper diction, the poet should place the scene, as far as possible, before his eyes. In this way, seeing everything with the utmost vividness, as if he were a spectator of the action, he will discover what is in keeping with it, and be most unlikely to overlook inconsistencies. The need of such a rule is shown by the fault found in *Carcinus*. *Amphiaraus* was on his way from the temple. This fact escaped the observation of one who did not see the situation. On the stage, however, the piece failed, the audience being offended at the oversight.

Again, the poet should work out his play, to the best of his power, with appropriate gestures; for 2

φύσεως οἱ ἐν τοῖς πάθεσιν εἰσιν καὶ χειμαίνει ὁ χειμαζόμενος  
 καὶ χαλεπαίνει ὁ ὀργιζόμενος ἀληθινώτατα. διὸ εὐφρούς ἡ  
 ποιητικὴ ἐστὶν ἡ μανικὸν· τούτων γὰρ οἱ μὲν εὐπλαστοὶ οἱ δὲ  
 ἐκστατικοὶ εἰσιν. τούς τε λόγους καὶ τοὺς πεποιημένους 3  
 1455 b δεῖ καὶ αὐτὸν ποιῶντα ἐκτίθεσθαι καθόλου, εἴθ' οὕτως ἐπεισ-  
 οδιῶν καὶ παρατείνειν. λέγω δὲ οὕτως ἂν θεωρεῖσθαι τὸ καθ-  
 ὄλου, οἶον τῆς Ἰφιγενείας· τυθείσης τινὸς κόρης καὶ ἀφα-  
 νισθείσης ἀδήλως τοῖς θύσασιν, ἰδρυνθείσης δὲ εἰς ἄλλην  
 5 χώραν, ἐν ἣ νόμος ἦν τοὺς ξένους θύειν τῇ θεῷ ταύτην ἔσχε  
 τὴν ἱερωσύνην· χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον τῷ ἀδελφῷ συνέβη ἐλθεῖν  
 τῆς ἱερείας (τὸ δὲ ὅτι ἀνεῖλεν ὁ θεὸς διὰ τινα αἰτίαν, ἔξω τοῦ  
 καθόλου [ἐλθεῖν ἐκεῖ], καὶ ἐφ' ὅ τι δέ, ἔξω τοῦ μύθου). ἐλθὼν  
 δὲ καὶ ληφθεὶς θύεσθαι μέλλων ἀνεγνώρισεν, εἴθ' ὡς Εὐρι-  
 10 πίδης εἴθ' ὡς Πολύιδος ἐποίησεν, κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς εἰπὼν ὅτι  
 οὐκ ἄρα μόνον τὴν ἀδελφὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸν ἔδει τυθῆναι,  
 καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἡ σωτηρία. μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ ἤδη ὑποθέντα τὰ 4  
 ὀνόματα ἐπεισοδιῶν· ὅπως δὲ ἔσται οἰκεία τὰ ἐπεισόδια,  
 οἶον ἐν τῷ Ὀρέστη ἡ μανία δι' ἧς ἐλήφθη καὶ ἡ σω-  
 15 τηρία διὰ τῆς καθάρσεως. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δράμασιν τὰ 5  
 ἐπεισόδια σύντομα, ἡ δ' ἐποποιία τούτοις μηκύνεται. τῆς

33. duplicem lect. εὐπλαστοὶ et ἀπλαστοὶ habuisse videtur Σ (Diels) . 34.  
 ἐκστατικοὶ Op (confirm. Arabs, vid. Margoliouth, Classical Review xv. 54):  
 ἐξεταστικοὶ codd. cett. τούς τε vel τούτους τε τοὺς apogr.: τούτους τε  
 A<sup>c</sup>, sed ne Graece quidem dicitur παρελημμένους conl. Vahlen  
 1455 b 2. ἐπεισοδίου A<sup>c</sup> παρατείνειν Vettori: περιτείνειν codd. 7—8.  
 secludendum videtur aut ἐλθεῖν ἐκεῖ (Bekker ed. 3) aut ἔξω τοῦ καθόλου  
 (Düntzer) 8. καθόλου] fort. μύθου Vahlen μύθου] fort. καθόλου  
 Vahlen 9. ἀνεγνώρισθη M. Schmidt 10. Πολύιδος codd. (cf. 1455 a  
 6) 15. δράμασι (vel ἄσμασι) apogr.: ἄρμασιν A<sup>c</sup>

those who feel emotion <sup>— πρὸ θεοῦ?</sup> are most convincing through natural sympathy with the characters they represent; and one who is agitated storms, one who is angry rages, with the most life-like reality. Hence poetry implies either a happy gift of nature or a strain of madness. In the one case a man can take the mould of any character; in the other, he is lifted out of his proper self.

As for the story, whether the poet takes it ready <sup>3</sup> made or constructs it for himself, he should first sketch its general outline, and then fill in the episodes and amplify in detail. The general plan may be illustrated by the Iphigenia. A young girl is sacrificed; she disappears mysteriously from the eyes of those who sacrificed her; she is transported to another country, where the custom is to offer up all strangers to the goddess. To this ministry she is appointed. Some time later her own brother chances to arrive. The fact that the oracle for some reason ordered him to go there, is outside the general plan of the play. The purpose, again, of his coming is outside the action proper. However, he comes, he is seized, and, when on the point of being sacrificed, reveals who he is. The mode of recognition may be either that of Euripides or of Polyidus, in whose play he exclaims very naturally:— 'So it was not my sister only, but I too, who was doomed to be sacrificed'; and by that remark he is saved.

After this, the names being once given, it remains <sup>4</sup> to fill in the episodes. We must see that they are relevant to the action. In the case of Orestes, for example, there is the madness which led to his capture, and his deliverance by means of the purificatory rite. In the drama, the episodes are short, but it is these that <sup>5</sup>



γὰρ Ὀδυσσεΐας <οὐ> μακρὸς ὁ λόγος ἐστίν· ἀποδημούντος  
 τινὸς ἔτη πολλὰ καὶ παραφυλαττομένου ὑπὸ τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος  
 καὶ μόνου ὄντος, ἔτι δὲ τῶν οἴκοι οὕτως ἐχόντων ὥστε τὰ χρή-  
 20 ματα ὑπὸ μνηστήρων ἀναλίσκεσθαι καὶ τὸν υἱὸν ἐπιβου-  
 λεύεσθαι, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀφικνεῖται χειμασθεὶς καὶ ἀναγνωρίσας  
 τινὰς αὐτὸς ἐπιθέμενος αὐτὸς μὲν ἐσώθη τοὺς δ' ἐχθροὺς  
 διέφθειρε. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἴδιον τοῦτο, τὰ δ' ἄλλα ἐπεισόδια.

XVIII Ἔστι δὲ πάσης τραγωδίας τὸ μὲν δέσις τὸ δὲ λύσις, τὰ  
 25 μὲν ἔξωθεν καὶ ἔνια τῶν ἔσωθεν πολλάκις ἢ δέσις, τὸ  
 δὲ λοιπὸν ἢ λύσις. λέγω δὲ δέσιν μὲν εἶναι τὴν ἀπ' ἀρ-  
 χῆς μέχρι τούτου τοῦ μέρους ὃ ἔσχατόν ἐστιν ἐξ οὗ μεταβαί-  
 νειν εἰς εὐτυχίαν ἢ εἰς ἀτυχίαν <συμβαίνει>, λύσιν δὲ τὴν  
 ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς μεταβάσεως μέχρι τέλους· ὥσπερ ἐν  
 30 τῷ Λυγκεῖ τῷ Θεοδέκτου δέσις μὲν τὰ τε προπεπραγμένα  
 καὶ ἢ τοῦ παιδίου λῆψις καὶ πάλιν † ἢ αὐτῶν δὴ \* \* †  
 λύσις δ' ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς αἰτιάσεως τοῦ θανάτου μέχρι τοῦ  
 τέλους. \* \* ἢ τραγωδίας δὲ εἶδη εἰσὶ τέσσαρα, [τοσαῦτα γὰρ 2  
 καὶ τὰ μέρη ἐλέχθη,] ἢ μὲν πεπλεγμένη, ἢς τὸ ὄλον ἐστίν

17. οὐ add. Vulcanius (confirm. Arabs) μακρὸς A<sup>c</sup>: μικρὸς apogr. 19.  
 ἐτι Riccardianus 16, Σ: ἐπει A<sup>c</sup> 21. δὲ codd.: δὴ coni. Vahlen 22.  
 τινὰς αὐτὸς codd.: οὗ αὐτὸς coni. Bywater: τινὰς αὐτὸς olim seclusi: αὐτὸς  
 secl. Spengel. Codicum lectionem stabilivit Vahlen (1898) citato Diodoro  
 Siculo iv. 59. 6 τὸν Διγέα διὰ τῶν συμβόλων ἀνεγνώρισεν: simili sensu, ut  
 videtur, Plutarch. Vit. Thes. ch. xii, τοὺς πολίτας ἐγνώριζεν 25. πολλάκις  
 post ἔξωθεν collocavit Ueberweg: codd. lect. confirm. Arabs 28. εἰς  
 εὐτυχίαν ἢ εἰς ἀτυχίαν O<sup>b</sup>: εἰς εὐτυχίαν codd. cett.: εἰς εὐτυχίαν <ἐκ δυστυχίας  
 συμβαίνει ἢ ἐξ εὐτυχίας εἰς δυστυχίαν> coni. Vahlen: <εἰς δυστυχίαν συμβαίνει  
 ἢ> εἰς εὐτυχίαν Gomperz 30. λυγκεῖ apogr.: λυκεῖ A<sup>c</sup> 31. δὴ A<sup>c</sup>:  
 δὴ <ἀπαγωγῆ> coni. Vahlen: δὴ <λωσις> Christ ('et ea quae patefecit'  
 Arabs) 32. λύσις δὲ ἢ Parisinus 2038: om. cett. ('solutio autem est  
 quod fiebat' Arabs) τοῦ θανάτου: fort. τοῦ Δαναοῦ (Vahlen et Spengel)  
 τοῦ τέλους] huc transferenda quae leguntur 1456 a 7-10 δίκαιον—  
 κρατεῖσθαι (Susemihl) τοσαῦτα γὰρ—ἐλέχθη secl. Susemihl ed. 1 34.  
 καὶ τὰ μέρη A<sup>c</sup>: κατὰ μέρη Heine: καὶ τὰ μύθων Tyrwhitt: καὶ τὰ μύθων  
 Susemihl ἢ μὲν <ἀπλῆ ἢ δὲ> Zeller (Vahlen post ἀναγνώρισιν 35 <ἢ  
 δὲ ἀπλῆ> cum definitione deesse suspicatur)

give extension to Epic poetry. Thus the story of the Odyssey can be stated briefly. A certain man is absent from home for many years; he is jealously watched by Poseidon, and left desolate. Meanwhile his home is in a wretched plight—suitors are wasting his substance and plotting against his son. At length, tempest-tost, he himself arrives; he makes certain persons acquainted with him; he attacks the suitors with his own hand, and is himself preserved while he destroys them. This is the essence of the plot; the rest is episode.

VIII ~~Every tragedy falls into two parts,—Complication and Unravelling or *Dénouement*.~~ Incidents extraneous to the action are frequently combined with a portion of the action proper, to form the Complication; the rest is the Unravelling. By the ~~Complication~~ I mean all that extends from the beginning of the action and the part which marks the turning-point to good or bad fortune. The Unravelling is that which extends from the beginning of the change to the end. Thus, in the Lynceus of Theodectes, the Complication consists of the incidents presupposed in the drama, the seizure of the child, and then again \* \* <The Unravelling> extends from the accusation of murder to the end.

There are four kinds of Tragedy, the Complex, 2 pending entirely on Reversal and Recognition; the

35 περιπέτεια καὶ ἀναγνώρισις, ἡ δὲ παθητικὴ, οἶον οἱ τε Αἴαν-  
 1456 a τες καὶ οἱ Ἴξιονες, ἡ δὲ ἠθικὴ, οἶον αἱ Φθιώτιδες καὶ ὁ  
 Πηλεΐς. τὸ δὲ τέταρτον <ἡ ἀπλή> \* \* † ὄης † οἶον αἱ τε  
 Φορκίδες καὶ Προμηθεὺς καὶ ὅσα ἐν ἕδον. μάλιστα μὲν οὖν<sup>3</sup>  
 ἅπαντα δεῖ πειράσθαι ἔχειν, εἰ δὲ μή, τὰ μέγιστα καὶ πλεῖ-  
 5 στα, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὡς νῦν συκοφαντοῦσιν τοὺς ποιητάς· γε-  
 γουότων γὰρ καθ' ἕκαστον μέρος ἀγαθῶν ποιητῶν, ἐκάστου τοῦ  
 ἰδίου ἀγαθοῦ ἀξιοῦσι τὸν ἕνα ὑπερβάλλειν. δίκαιον δὲ καὶ  
 τραγωδίαν ἄλλην καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν λέγειν οὐδεν<ι> ἴσως <ὡς>  
 τῷ μύθῳ· τοῦτο δέ, ὧν ἡ αὐτὴ πλοκὴ καὶ λύσις. πολλοὶ δὲ  
 10 πλέξαντες εὖ λούουσι κακῶς· δεῖ δὲ ἄμφω ἀεὶ κρατεῖσθαι.  
 χρῆ δὲ ὅπερ εἴρηται πολλάκις μεμνήσθαι καὶ μὴ ποιεῖν ἐπο-<sup>4</sup>  
 ποιικὸν σύστημα τραγωδίαν. ἐποποιικὸν δὲ λέγω τὸ πολύ-  
 μυθον, οἶον εἴ τις τὸν τῆς Ἰλιάδος ὄλον ποιοῖ μῦθον. ἐκεῖ  
 μὲν γὰρ διὰ τὸ μῆκος λαμβάνει τὰ μέρη τὸ πρέπον μέγεθος,  
 15 ἐν δὲ τοῖς δράμασι πολὺ παρὰ τὴν ὑπόληψιν ἀποβαίνει. ση-<sup>5</sup>  
 μείον δέ, ὅσοι πέρσιν Ἰλίου ὄλην ἐποίησαν καὶ μὴ κατὰ μέρος  
 ὥσπερ Εὐριπίδης, <ἡ> Νιόβην καὶ μὴ ὥσπερ Αἰσχύλος,  
 ἡ ἐκπίπτουσιν ἢ κακῶς ἀγωνίζονται, ἐπεὶ καὶ Ἀγάθων ἐξ-

1456 a 2. ἡ ἀπλή add. Susemihl post ἡ ἀπλή nonnulla intercidisse puto  
 τὸ δὲ τέταρτον ὄης A<sup>c</sup>: τὸ δὲ τέταρτον ὄψις (cf. ad 1458 a 6) Bywater, recte,  
 nisi fallor, quod ad ὄψις attinet, sed τὰ εἶδη in hoc loco eadem utique esse  
 debent quae in xxiv. 1: τὸ δὲ τέταρτον τερατῶδες Schrader: τὸ δὲ τερατῶδες  
 <ἄλλοτριον> Wecklein 5. ἄλλως τε apogr.: ἀλλ' ὡς γε A<sup>c</sup> 6.  
 ἐκάστου Marcianus 215, Parisinus 2038: ἕκαστον A<sup>c</sup> 7-10. δίκαιον—  
 κρατεῖσθαι v. ad 1455 b 32 8. οὐδενὶ ἴσως ὡς Bonitz: οὐδενὶ ὡς Tyrwhitt:  
 οὐδὲν ἴσως τῷ codd. 9. τοῦτο] ταῦτὸ Teichmüller: τοῦτῳ Bursian 10.  
 κρατεῖσθαι (cf. Polit. iv. (vii.) 13, 1331 b 38) Vahlen et Σ ('prensarunt  
 utrumque' Arabs): κρατεῖσθαι codd. 12. δὲ ante τὸ add. A<sup>c</sup>: om. apogr.  
 17. ἡ add. Vahlen Νιόβην] Ἐκάβην Valla, unde Ἐκάβην [καὶ . . .  
 Αἰσχύλος,] Reinach

1456 a Pathetic (where the motive is passion),—such as the tragedies on Ajax and Ixion; the Ethical (where the motives are ethical),—such as the Phthiotides and the Peleus. The fourth kind is the Simple. <We here exclude the purely spectacular element>, exemplified by the Phorcides, the Prometheus, and scenes laid in Hades. The poet should endeavour, if possible, to combine all poetic merits; or failing that, the greatest number and those the most important; the more so, in face of the cavilling criticism of the day. For whereas there have hitherto been good poets, each in his own branch, the critics now expect one man to surpass all others in their several lines of excellence.

In speaking of a tragedy as the same or different, the best test to take is the plot. Identity exists where the Complication and Unravelling are the same. Many poets tie the knot well, but unravel it ill. Both arts, however, should always be mastered.

Again, the poet should remember what has been often said, and not make a Tragedy into an Epic structure. By an Epic structure I mean one with a multiplicity of plots: as if, for instance, you were to make a tragedy out of the entire story of the Iliad. In the Epic poem, owing to its length, each part assumes its proper magnitude. In the drama the result is far from answering to the poet's expectation. The proof is that the poets who have dramatised the whole story of the Fall of Troy, instead of selecting portions, like Euripides; or who have taken the whole tale of Niobe, and not a part of her story, like Aeschylus, either fail utterly or meet with poor success on the stage. Even Agathon

ἐπεσεν ἐν τούτῳ μόνῳ· ἐν δὲ ταῖς περιπετεῖαις [καὶ ἐν τοῖς  
 20 ἀπλοῖς πράγμασι] στοχάζεται ὡς βούλονται θαυμαστῶς·  
 τραγικὸν γὰρ τοῦτο καὶ φιλόφρων. ἔστιν δὲ τοῦτο, ὅταν 6  
 ὁ σοφὸς [μὲν] μετὰ πονηρίας ἐξαπατηθῆ, ὥσπερ Σίσι-  
 φος, καὶ ὁ ἀνδρείος μὲν ἄδικος δὲ ἠττηθῆ. ἔστιν δὲ τοῦτο  
 εἰκὸς ὥσπερ Ἀγάθων λέγει, εἰκὸς γὰρ γίνεσθαι πολλὰ  
 25 καὶ παρὰ τὸ εἰκὸς. καὶ τὸν χορὸν δὲ ἓνα δεῖ ὑπολα-  
 βεῖν τῶν ὑποκριτῶν, καὶ μόριον εἶναι τοῦ ὄλου καὶ συναγω-  
 νίζεσθαι μὴ ὡς περ Εὐριπίδῃ ἀλλ' ὡς περ Σοφοκλεῖ. τοῖς  
 δὲ λοιποῖς τὰ ἀδόμενα <οὐδὲν> μᾶλλον τοῦ μύθου ἢ ἄλλης  
 τραγωδίας ἐστίν· διὸ ἐμβόλιμα ἄδουσιν πρώτου ἄρξαντος  
 30 Ἀγάθωνος τοῦ τοιούτου. καίτοι τί διαφέρει ἢ ἐμβόλιμα  
 ἄδειν ἢ εἰ ῥήσιν ἐξ ἄλλου εἰς ἄλλο ἀρμόττοι ἢ ἐπεισόδιον  
 ὄλον;

XIX Περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἄλλων ἤδη εἴρηται, λοιπὸν δὲ περὶ  
 λέξεως καὶ διανοίας εἰπεῖν. τὰ μὲν οὖν περὶ τὴν διάνοιαν ἐν  
 35 τοῖς περὶ ῥητορικῆς κείσθω, τοῦτο γὰρ ἴδιον μᾶλλον ἐκείνης  
 τῆς μεθόδου. ἔστι δὲ κατὰ τὴν διάνοιαν ταῦτα, ὅσα ὑπὸ  
 τοῦ λόγου δεῖ παρασκευασθῆναι. μέρη δὲ τούτων τό τε ἀπο- 2  
 δεικνύναι καὶ τὸ λύειν καὶ τὸ πάθῃ παρασκευάζειν, οἷον  
 1456 b ἔλεον ἢ φόβον ἢ ὀργὴν καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, καὶ ἔτι μέγεθος

19—20. καὶ ἐν . . . πράγμασι secl. Susemihl: tuetur Arabs ἐν τοῖς ἀπλοῖς]  
 ἐν τοῖς διπλοῖς Twining: ἀπλῶς ἐν τοῖς Gomperz 20. στοχάζεται Heinsius:  
 στοχάζονται codd. 21. τραγικὸν—φιλόφρων infra post ἠττηθῆ collocat  
 Susemihl 22. aut secludendum μὲν (Margoliouth cum Arabs) aut δὲ  
 post πονηρίας legendum (add. Riccardianus 16) 23. ἠττηθῆ A<sup>c</sup> 24.  
 καὶ ante εἰκὸς add. Susemihl (confirm. Arabs) 27. ὥσπερ παρ'—ὥσπερ παρὰ  
 Ald., ceterum cf. Pol. 1339 b 8 28. λοιποῖς] πολλοῖς Margoliouth cum  
 Arabs ἀδόμενα Maggi ('quae canuntur' Arabs): διδόμενα A<sup>c</sup> οὐδὲν  
 add. Vahlen, et Σ ('nihil . . . aliud amplius' Arabs): οὐ add. Maggi  
 30. τοιούτου] ποιητοῦ Σ, ut videtur 33. ἤδη apogr.: ἢδ' A<sup>c</sup>: εἰδεῶν Σ,  
 ut videtur 34. καὶ Hermann: ἢ codd. 38. πάθῃ secl. Bernays,  
 tuetur Arabs

has been known to fail from this one defect. In his Reversals of Intention, however, he shows a marvellous skill in the effort to hit the popular taste,—to produce a tragic effect that satisfies the moral sense. This effect is produced when the clever rogue, like Sisyphus, is outwitted, or the brave villain defeated. Such an event is probable in Agathon's sense of the word: 'it is probable,' he says, 'that many things should happen contrary to probability.'

~~The Chorus too should be regarded as one of the 7 actors; it should be an integral part of the whole, and share in the action, in the manner not of Euripides but of Sophocles. As for the later poets, their choral songs pertain as little to the subject of the piece as to that of any other tragedy. They are, therefore, sung as mere interludes,—a practice first begun by Agathon. Yet what difference is there between introducing such choral interludes, and transferring a speech, or even a whole act, from one play to another?~~

XIX It remains to speak of Diction and Thought, the other parts of Tragedy having been already discussed. Concerning Thought, we may assume what is said in the Rhetoric, to which inquiry the subject more strictly belongs. Under Thought is included every effect which has to be produced by speech, the subdivisions being,— 2 proof and refutation; the excitation of the feelings, such as pity, fear, anger, and the like; the suggestion of

U  
U

καὶ μικρότητας. δῆλον δὲ ὅτι καὶ [ἐν] τοῖς πράγμασιν ἀπὸ 3  
 τῶν αὐτῶν ἰδεῶν δεῖ χρῆσθαι, ὅταν ἡ ἐλεεινὰ ἢ δεινὰ ἢ  
 μεγάλα ἢ εἰκότα δέη παρασκευάζειν· πλὴν τοσοῦτον δια-  
 5 φέρει, ὅτι τὰ μὲν δεῖ φαίνεσθαι ἄνευ διδασκαλίας, τὰ δὲ  
 ἐν τῷ λόγῳ ὑπὸ τοῦ λέγοντος παρασκευάζεσθαι καὶ παρὰ  
 τὸν λόγον γίνεσθαι. τί γὰρ ἂν εἴη τοῦ λέγοντος ἔργον, εἰ  
 φαίνοιτο ἢ διάνοια καὶ μὴ διὰ τὸν λόγον; τῶν δὲ περὶ τὴν 4  
 λέξιν ἐν μὲν ἐστὶν εἶδος θεωρίας τὰ σχήματα τῆς λέξεως,  
 10 ἃ ἐστὶν εἰδέναι τῆς ὑποκριτικῆς καὶ τοῦ τὴν τοιαύτην ἔχον-  
 τος ἀρχιτεκτονικῆν, οἷον τί ἐντολὴ καὶ τί εὐχὴ καὶ διή-  
 γησις καὶ ἀπειλὴ καὶ ἐρώτησις καὶ ἀπόκρισις καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο  
 τοιοῦτον. παρὰ γὰρ τὴν τούτων γνῶσιν ἡ ἄγνοιαν οὐδὲν 5  
 εἰς τὴν ποιητικὴν ἐπιτίμημα φέρεται ὃ τι καὶ ἄξιον σπου-  
 15 δῆς. τί γὰρ ἂν τις ὑπολάβοι ἡμαρτησθαι ἃ Πρωταγόρας  
 ἐπιτιμᾷ, ὅτι εὐχεσθαι οἰόμενος ἐπιτάττει εἰπὼν “μῆνιν ἄειδε  
 θεά,” τὸ γὰρ κελεύσαι φησὶν ποιεῖν τι ἢ μὴ ἐπίταξις ἐστίν.  
 διὸ παρείσθω ὡς ἄλλης καὶ οὐ τῆς ποιητικῆς ὄν θεώρημα.  
 XX [Τῆς δὲ λέξεως ἀπάσης τὰδ' ἐστὶ τὰ μέρη, στοι-  
 20 χεῖον συλλαβῆ σύνδεσμος ὄνομα ῥήμα [ἄρθρον] πτώσις  
 λόγος. στοιχείου μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν φωνὴ ἀδιαίρετος, οὐ πᾶσα 2

1456 b 2. μικρότητας A<sup>c</sup>: μικρότητα apogr. ἐν secl. Ueberweg: <τοῖς>  
 ἐν Wrobel 3. ἰδεῶν apogr.: εἰδεῶν A<sup>c</sup> 4. δέη apogr. pauca: δ' ἢ  
 A<sup>c</sup> 8. φαίνοιτο scripsi: φανοῖτο codd. ἢ διάνοια Margoliouth, Wrobel  
 (praeunte Spengel): ἡδέα codd. ('voluptates' Arabs): ἡδη Castelvetro: ἢ δέοι  
 Vahlen (ed. 2): ἡδη ἃ δεῖ Tyrwhitt: ἡδη τῇ θεᾷ Gomperz 20. ἄρθρον secl.  
 Hartung (quem dubitantius secutus sum): post σύνδεσμος transtulit Spengel  
 (confirm. Arabs): σύνδεσμος <ἢ> ἄρθρον Steinthal

importance or its opposite. / Now, it is evident that 3  
 the dramatic incidents must be treated from the same  
 points of view as the dramatic speeches, when the object  
 is to evoke the sense of pity, fear, importance, or prob-  
 ability. The only difference is, that the incidents ★ P-E  
 should speak for themselves without verbal exposition;  
 while the effects aimed at in speech should be pro-  
 duced by the speaker, and as a result of the speech.  
 For what were the business of a speaker, if the Thought  
 were revealed quite apart from what he says?

Next, as regards Diction. One branch of the inquiry 4  
 treats of the Modes of Expression. But this province  
 of knowledge belongs to the art of Delivery, and to  
 the masters of that science. It includes, for instance,  
 —what is a command, a prayer, a narrative, a threat,  
 a question, an answer, and so forth. To know or not 5  
 to know these things involves no serious censure upon  
 the poet's art. For who can admit the fault imputed  
 to Homer by Protagoras,—that in the words, 'Sing,  
 goddess, of the wrath,' he gives a command under the  
 idea that he utters a prayer? For to tell some one to  
 do a thing or not to do it is, he says, a command. We  
 may, therefore, pass this over as an inquiry that belongs  
 to another art, not to poetry.

XX [Language in general includes the following parts:—  
 Letter, Syllable, Connecting word, Noun, Verb, Inflexion  
 or Case, Sentence or Phrase.]

A Letter is an indivisible sound, yet not every such 2  
 sound, but only one which can form part of a group of



δὲ ἄλλ' ἐξ ἧς πέφυκε συνθετὴ γίνεσθαι φωνή· καὶ γὰρ τῶν  
 θηρίων εἰσὶν ἀδιαίρετοι φωναί, ὧν οὐδεμίαν λέγω στοι-  
 χεῖον. ταύτης δὲ μέρη τό τε φωνῆεν καὶ τὸ ἡμίφωνον καὶ  
 25 ἄφωνον. ἔστιν δὲ φωνῆεν μὲν <τὸ> ἄνευ προσβολῆς ἔχον φω- 3  
 νὴν ἀκουστήν, ἡμίφωνον δὲ τὸ μετὰ προσβολῆς ἔχον φω-  
 νὴν ἀκουστήν, οἶον τὸ Σ καὶ τὸ Ρ, ἄφωνον δὲ τὸ μετὰ  
 προσβολῆς καθ' αὐτὸ μὲν οὐδεμίαν ἔχον φωνήν, μετὰ δὲ  
 τῶν ἐχόντων τινα φωνὴν γινόμενον ἀκουστόν, οἶον τὸ Γ καὶ  
 30 τὸ Δ. ταῦτα δὲ διαφέρει σχήμασιν τε τοῦ στόματος καὶ 4  
 τόποις καὶ δασύτητι καὶ ψιλότητι καὶ μήκει καὶ βραχύ-  
 τητι, ἔτι δὲ ὀξύτητι καὶ βαρύτητι καὶ τῷ μέσῳ· περὶ ὧν  
 καθ' ἕκαστον [ἐν] τοῖς μετρικοῖς προσήκει θεωρεῖν. συλλαβῆ 5  
 δὲ ἐστὶν φωνὴ ἄσημος συνθετὴ ἐξ ἀφώνου καὶ φωνῆν ἔχον-  
 35 τος· καὶ γὰρ τὸ ΓΡ ἄνευ τοῦ Α συλλαβῆ καὶ μετὰ τοῦ  
 Α, οἶον τὸ ΓΡΑ. ἀλλὰ καὶ τούτων θεωρησαί τὰς διαφορὰς  
 τῆς μετρικῆς ἐστίν. σύνδεσμος δὲ ἐστὶν φωνὴ ἄσημος ἢ οὐ- 6  
 1457 a τε κωλύει οὔτε ποιεῖ φωνὴν μίαν σημαντικὴν ἐκ πλειόνων  
 φωνῶν, πεφυκυῖα [συν]τίθεσθαι καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων καὶ ἐπὶ

22. συνθετὴ ἀροgr. ('compositae voci' Arabs): συνετὴ A<sup>o</sup> 25. τὸ add.  
 Christ 33. ἐν secl. Spengel 34. post φωνῆν ἔχοντος conī. Christ  
 <ἢ πλειόνων ἀφώνων καὶ φωνῆν ἔχοντος> 35-36. καὶ γὰρ τὸ ΓΡ ἄνευ  
 τοῦ Α συλλαβῆ καὶ μετὰ τοῦ Α A<sup>o</sup>: 'nam Γ et Ρ sine Α non faciunt syllabam,  
 quoniam tantum fiunt syllaba cum Α' Arabs, unde καὶ γὰρ τὸ ΓΡ <οὐκ>  
 ἄνευ τοῦ Ρ συλλαβῆ, ἀλλὰ μετὰ τοῦ Α Margoliouth (similia Susemihl ed. 1):  
 καὶ γὰρ τὸ ΓΑ ἄνευ τοῦ Ρ συλλαβῆ καὶ μετὰ τοῦ Ρ Tygrwhitt: καὶ γὰρ τὸ Α ἄνευ  
 τοῦ ΓΡ συλλαβῆ καὶ μετὰ τοῦ ΓΡ M. Schmidt 1457 a 1-8. ἢ οὔτε κωλύει  
 —ἦτοι, δέ. Hartung, Susemihl. Codicum fide ita vulgo legitur: ἢ οὔτε  
 κωλύει οὔτε ποιεῖ φωνὴν μίαν σημαντικὴν, ἐκ πλειόνων φωνῶν πεφυκυῖαν συντί-  
 θεσθαι, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ μέσου, ἢν μὴ ἀρμόττει (ἢν μὴ ἀρμόττη  
 ἀροgr.) ἐν ἀρχῇ τιθέται καθ' αὐτόν (αὐτὴν Tygrwhitt), οἶον μὲν (μὲν. A<sup>o</sup>), ἦτοι  
 (ἦτοι. A<sup>o</sup>), δέ (δε A<sup>o</sup>). ἢ φωνὴ ἄσημος ἢ ἐκ πλειόνων μὲν φωνῶν μᾶς σημαντικῶν  
 (Robortelli: σημαντικῶν A<sup>o</sup>) δὲ ποιεῖν πέφυκεν μίαν σημαντικὴν φωνήν. ἀρθρον  
 δ' ἐστὶ φωνὴ ἄσημος, ἢ λόγου ἀρχὴν ἢ τέλος ἢ διορισμὸν δηλοῖ, οἶον τὸ ἀμφί  
 (Hartung: φ. μ. ἰ. A<sup>o</sup>: φμη Ald., Bekker) καὶ τὸ περὶ (π. ε. ρ. ἰ. A<sup>o</sup>) καὶ τὰ ἄλλα.

sounds. For even brutes utter indivisible sounds, none of which I call a letter. The sound I mean may be <sup>3</sup> either a vowel, a semi-vowel, or a mute. A vowel is that which without impact of tongue or lip has an audible sound. A semi-vowel, that which with such impact has an audible sound, as S and R. A mute, that which with such impact has by itself no sound, but joined to a vowel sound becomes audible, as G and D. These are distinguished according to the form <sup>4</sup> assumed by the mouth, and the place where they are produced; according as they are aspirated or smooth, long or short; as they are acute, grave, or of an intermediate tone; which inquiry belongs in detail to a treatise on metre.

A Syllable is a non-significant sound, composed of a <sup>5</sup> mute and a vowel: for GR without A is a syllable, as also with A,—GRA. But the investigation of these differences belongs also to metrical science.

→ A Connecting word is a non-significant sound, which <sup>6</sup>  
 1457 a neither causes nor hinders the union of many sounds into one significant sound; it may be placed at either

Sed nescio an Döring vero propius accesserit qui locum sic restituit: σύνδεσμος δέ ἐστιν φωνῆ ἀσημος ἢ ἐκ πλείονων μὲν φωνῶν, μᾶς σημαντικῶν δὲ ποιεῖν πέφυκεν μίαν σημαντικὴν φωνήν, ἢν μὴ ἀρμόττει ἐν ἀρχῇ λόγου τίθεναι καθ' αὐτήν, οἷον τὸ ἀμφὶ καὶ τὸ περὶ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα. ἄρθρον δ' ἐστὶ φωνῆ ἀσημος, ἢ οὔτε κωλύει οὔτε ποιεῖ φωνήν μίαν σημαντικὴν ἐκ πλείονων φωνῶν [πεφυκυῖαν] συντίθεσθαι, <ἀλλ' > ἢ λόγου ἀρχὴν ἢ τέλος ἢ διορισμὸν δηλοῖ, πεφυκυῖα τίθεσθαι καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀκρων καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ μέσου, οἷον μὲν, ἦτοι, δέ. Nullam tamen Arabis rationem Döring habuit, et Arabs quidem cum nostris codicibus parum congruit. Ipse ut in re nondum satis explicata ἐπέχειν me fateor 2. πεφυκυῖα τίθεσθαι Winstanley: πεφυκυῖαν συντίθεσθαι codd.

τοῦ μέσου· ἡ φωνὴ ἄσημος ἢ ἐκ πλειόνων μὲν φωνῶν  
 μιᾶς, σημαντικῶν δέ, ποιεῖν πέφυκεν μίαν σημαντικὴν  
 5 φωνήν, οἷον τὸ ἀμφί καὶ τὸ περί καὶ τὰ ἄλλα· <ἦ> φωνὴ 7  
 ἄσημος ἢ λόγου ἀρχὴν ἢ τέλος ἢ διορισμὸν δηλοῖ, ἢν μὴ  
 ἀρμόττει ἐν ἀρχῇ λόγου τιθέναι καθ' αὐτήν, οἷον μὲν, ἦτοι,  
 δέ. [ἢ φωνὴ ἄσημος ἢ οὔτε κωλύει οὔτε ποιεῖ φωνήν  
 μίαν σημαντικὴν ἐκ πλειόνων φωνῶν πεφυκυῖα τίθεσθαι καὶ  
 10 ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ μέσου.] ὄνομα δέ ἐστὶ φωνὴ 8  
 συνθετὴ σημαντικὴ ἄνευ χρόνου ἧς μέρος οὐδὲν ἐστὶ καθ'  
 αὐτὸ σημαντικόν· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς διπλοῖς οὐ χρώμεθα ὡς καὶ  
 αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ σημαίνει, οἷον ἐν τῷ Θεοδώρῳ τὸ δῶρον  
 οὐ σημαίνει. ῥῆμα δὲ φωνὴ συνθετὴ σημαντικὴ μετὰ χρό- 9  
 15 νου ἧς οὐδὲν μέρος σημαίνει καθ' αὐτό, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν  
 ὀνομάτων· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἄνθρωπος ἢ λευκόν οὐ σημαίνει τὸ  
 πότε, τὸ δὲ βαδίζει ἢ βεβάδικεν προσσημαίνει τὸ μὲν τὸν  
 παρόντα χρόνον τὸ δὲ τὸν παρεληλυθότα. πτώσις δ' ἐστὶν 10  
 ὀνόματος ἢ ῥήματος ἢ μὲν τὸ κατὰ τὸ τούτου ἢ τούτῳ ση-  
 20 μαίνουν καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, ἢ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ἐνὶ ἢ πολλοῖς, οἷον  
 ἄνθρωποι ἢ ἄνθρωπος, ἢ δὲ κατὰ τὰ ὑποκριτικά, οἷον κατ'  
 ἐρώτησιν, ἐπίταξιν· τὸ γὰρ ἐβάδισεν; ἢ βάδιζε πτώσις  
 ῥήματος κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ εἶδη ἐστίν. λόγος δὲ φωνὴ συνθετὴ 11  
 σημαντικὴ ἧς ἕνια μέρη καθ' αὐτὰ σημαίνει τι· οὐ γὰρ  
 25 ἅπας λόγος ἐκ ῥημάτων καὶ ὀνομάτων σύγκειται, οἷον “ὁ  
 τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ὀρισμός”· ἀλλ' ἐνδέχεται <καὶ> ἄνευ ῥημάτων

7. ἦτοι] δὴ τοὶ Bywater 8-10. ἢ . . . μέσου seclus. Reiz 17. ποτὲ  
 Spengel βαδίζει apogr.: βαδίζειν A<sup>c</sup> προσσημαίνει Parisinus 2038:  
 προσσημαίνει A<sup>c</sup> 19. τὸ κατὰ τὸ Riccardianus 16: τὸ κατὰ A<sup>c</sup>: κατὰ τὸ  
 Reiz 22. ἐβάδισεν; (nota interrogationis addita) Tyrwhitt: <ἄρ'>  
 ἐβάδισεν; Vahlen βαδίξε Riccardianus 16: ἐβάδισεν A<sup>c</sup> 26. καὶ  
 add. Gompertz, quem secutus sum etiam in loci interpunctione

end or in the middle of a sentence. Or, a non-significant sound, which out of several sounds, each of them significant, is capable of forming one significant sound,—as *ἀμφί, περί,* and the like. Or, a non-significant sound, 7 which marks the beginning, end, or division of a sentence; such, however, that it cannot correctly stand by itself at the beginning of a sentence,—as *μέν, ἤτοι, δέ.*

A Noun is a composite significant sound, not marking 8 time, of which no part is in itself significant: for in double or compound words we do not employ the separate parts as if each were in itself significant. Thus in Theodorus, 'god-given,' the *δῶρον* or 'gift' is not in itself significant.

A Verb is a composite significant sound, marking 9 time, in which, as in the noun, no part is in itself significant. For 'man,' or 'white' does not express the idea of 'when'; but 'he walks,' or 'he has walked' does connote time, present or past.

Inflexion belongs both to the noun and verb, and 10 expresses either the relation 'of,' 'to,' or the like; or that of number, whether one or many, as 'man' or 'men'; or the modes or tones in actual delivery, e.g. a question or a command. 'Did he go?' and 'go' are verbal inflexions of this kind.

A Sentence or Phrase is a composite significant 11 sound, some at least of whose parts are in themselves significant; for not every such group of words consists of verbs and nouns—'the definition of man,' for example—but it may dispense even with the verb. Still it will

εἶναι λόγον. μέρος μέντοι ἀεί τι σημαίνουν ἔξει, οἶον “ἐν τῷ βαδίζειν,” “Κλέων ὁ Κλέωνος.” εἰς δέ ἐστι λόγος διχῶς, ἢ γὰρ 12 ὁ ἐν σημαίνων, ἢ ὁ ἐκ πλειόνων συνδέσμφ, οἶον ἢ Ἰλιάς μὲν 30 συνδέσμφ εἰς, ὁ δὲ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τῷ ἐν σημαίνειν.]

XXI Ὀνόματος δὲ εἶδη τὸ μὲν ἀπλοῦν, ἀπλοῦν δὲ λέγω ὁ μὴ ἐκ σημαίνοντων σύγκειται, οἶον γῆ, τὸ δὲ διπλοῦν· τούτου δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐκ σημαίνοντος καὶ ἀσήμου (πλὴν οὐκ ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι σημαίνοντος [καὶ ἀσήμου]), τὸ δὲ ἐκ σημαίνοντων 35 σύγκειται. εἴη δ’ ἂν καὶ τριπλοῦν καὶ τετραπλοῦν ὄνομα καὶ πολλαπλοῦν, οἶον τὰ πολλὰ τῶν Μασσαλιωτῶν· Ἐρμοκαί- 1457 b κόξανθος <πέυξάμενος Διὶ πατρί>. ἅπαν δὲ ὄνομά ἐστιν 2 ἢ κύριον ἢ γλῶττα ἢ μεταφορὰ ἢ κόσμος ἢ πεποιημένον ἢ ἐπεκτεταμένον ἢ ὑψηρημένον ἢ ἐξηλλαγμένον. λέγω 3 δὲ κύριον μὲν ᾧ χρῶνται ἕκαστοι, γλῶτταν δὲ ᾧ 5 ἕτεροι· ὥστε φανερόν ὅτι καὶ γλῶτταν καὶ κύριον εἶναι δυνατὸν τὸ αὐτό, μὴ τοῖς αὐτοῖς δέ· τὸ γὰρ σίγγυον Κυπρίοις μὲν κύριον, ἡμῖν δὲ γλῶττα. μεταφορὰ δὲ 4 ἐστὶν ὀνόματος ἀλλοτρίου ἐπιφορὰ ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ γένους ἐπὶ εἶδος ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ εἶδους ἐπὶ τὸ γένος ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ εἶ-

28. βαδίζειν A<sup>c</sup>: βαδίζει apogr. Κλέων ὁ Κλέωνος M. Schmidt (Κλέωνος habuit Σ): Κλέων ὁ Κλέων codd. ἐν τῷ “βαδίζει Κλέων” ὁ (τὸ Bigg) Κλέων edd. plerique 29. συνδέσμφ Riccardianus 16: συνδέσμων A<sup>c</sup> 30. τῷ apogr.: τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 33. ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι Vahlen, et Σ, ut videtur: ἐν τῷ ὀνόματος codd.: ἐντὸς τοῦ ὀνόματος Tucker 34. καὶ ἀσήμου om. Σ, ut videtur (‘non tamen indicans in nomine’ Arabs). Idem effecit Ussing deleto καὶ ἀσήμου in v. 33 et mutata interpunctione, ἐκ σημαίνοντος, πλὴν οὐκ ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι σημαίνοντος, καὶ ἀσήμου, κτλ. 36. μεγαλιωτῶν codd.: Μασσαλιωτῶν Diels, qui collato Arabe (‘sicut multa de Massiliotis Hermocaiscozanthus qui supplicabatur dominum caelorum’) totum versum Ἐρμοκ. — πατρί tanquam epici carminis, comice scripti, ex coniectura restituit. Ἐρμοκ. ad Phocaeam spectat, Massiliae μητρόπολιν, urbem inter Hermum et Caicum sitam. Ceteras emendationes licet iam missas facere, e.g. μεγαλείων ὡς Winstanley: μεγαλείων ὡν Bekker ed. 3: μεγαλείων ὡν Vahlen 1457 b 3. ἀφηρημένον Spengel (cf. 1458 a 1) 9. τὸ om. apogr.

always have some significant part, as 'in walking,' or 'Cleon son of Cleon.' A sentence or phrase may form 12 a unity in two ways,—either as signifying one thing, or as consisting of several parts linked together. Thus the Iliad is one by the linking together of parts, the definition of man by the unity of the thing signified.]

XXI Words are of two kinds, simple and double. By simple I mean those composed of non-significant elements, such as γῆ. By double or compound, those composed either of a significant and non-significant element (though within the whole word no element is significant), or of elements that are both significant. A word may likewise be triple, quadruple, or multiple in form, like 1457 b so many Massilian expressions, e.g. 'Hermo-caico-xanthus <who prayed to Father Zeus.>'

Every word is either current, or strange, or meta-2 phorical, or ornamental, or newly-coined, or lengthened, or contracted, or altered.

By a current or proper word I mean one which is 3 in general use among a people; by a strange word, one which is in use in another country. Plainly, therefore, the same word may be at once strange and current, but not in relation to the same people. The word σίγυρον, 'lance,' is to the Cyprians a current term but to us a strange one.

Metaphor is the application of an alien name by 4 transference either from genus to species, or from species to genus, or from species to species, or by analogy, that is,

10 δους ἐπὶ εἶδος ἢ κατὰ τὸ ἀνάλογον. λέγω δὲ ἀπὸ γένους μὲν 5  
ἐπὶ εἶδος οἶον “νηὺς δέ μοι ἦδ’ ἔστηκεν.” τὸ γὰρ ὀρμῆν ἐστὶν  
ἐστάναι τι. ἀπ’ εἶδους δὲ ἐπὶ γένος “ἦ δὴ μυρὶ Ὀδυσσεὺς  
ἐσθλὰ ἔοργεν.” τὸ γὰρ μυρίον πολὺ <τί> ἐστὶν, φ’ νῦν ἀντὶ  
25 ἀπὸ ψυχὴν ἀρύσας” καὶ “ταμῶν ἀπειρεὶ χαλκῶ.” ἐνταῦθα  
γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀρύσαι ταμεῖν, τὸ δὲ ταμεῖν ἀρύσαι εἴρηκεν·  
ἄμφω γὰρ ἀφελεῖν τί ἐστὶν. τὸ δὲ ἀνάλογον λέγω, ὅταν 6  
ὁμοίως ἔχη τὸ δεύτερον πρὸς τὸ πρῶτον καὶ τὸ τέταρτον  
πρὸς τὸ τρίτον· ἐρεῖ γὰρ ἀντὶ τοῦ δευτέρου τὸ τέταρτον ἢ  
20 ἀντὶ τοῦ τετάρτου τὸ δεύτερον, καὶ ἐνίοτε προστιθέασιν ἀνθ’  
οὗ λέγει πρὸς ὃ ἐστι. λέγω δὲ οἶον ὁμοίως ἔχει φιάλη πρὸς  
Διόνυσον καὶ ἀσπίς πρὸς Ἄρη· ἐρεῖ τοίνυν τὴν φιάλην ἀσπίδα  
Διονύσου καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα φιάλην Ἄρεως. ἢ δὲ γῆρας πρὸς  
βίον, καὶ ἐσπέρα πρὸς ἡμέραν· ἐρεῖ τοίνυν τὴν ἐσπέραν γῆ-  
25 ρας ἡμέρας καὶ τὸ γῆρας ἐσπέραν βίου ἢ, ὥσπερ Ἐμπεδοκλῆς,  
δυσμᾶς βίου. ἐνίοις δ’ οὐκ ἐστὶν ὄνομα κείμενον τῶν ἀνά- 7  
λογον, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲν ἦττον ὁμοίως λεχθήσεται· οἶον τὸ τὸν  
καρπὸν μὲν ἀφιέναι σπείρειν, τὸ δὲ τὴν φλόγα ἀπὸ τοῦ  
ἡλίου ἀνώνυμον· ἀλλ’ ὁμοίως ἔχει τοῦτο πρὸς τὸν ἡλιον καὶ  
30 τὸ σπείρειν πρὸς τὸν καρπὸν, διὸ εἴρηται “σπείρων θεοκτίσταν  
φλόγα.” ἔστι δὲ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ τῆς μεταφορᾶς χρῆσθαι 8  
καὶ ἄλλως, προσαγορεύσαντα τὸ ἀλλότριον ἀποφῆσαι τῶν

11. ὀρμῆν A<sup>c</sup> 12. ἐστάναι (ā ut videtur ex á) A<sup>c</sup> ἢ δὴ apogr. :  
ἦδη A<sup>c</sup> 13. μύριον A<sup>c</sup> τί add. Twining 15. ἀρύσας καὶ  
Tygwhitt (ἀρύσας Leidensis, corr. Vaticanus 1400, καὶ Laurentianus lx. 21) :  
ἀερύσασκε A<sup>c</sup> ταμῶν Bekker (ed. 3) : τεμῶν A<sup>c</sup> ἀπειρεὶ A<sup>c</sup> 25–26.  
ἡμέρας—δυσμᾶς Riccardianus 16, Parisinus 2038 : ἡμέρας ἢ ὥσπερ Ἐμπεδοκλῆς  
καὶ τὸ γῆρας ἐσπέραν βίου ἢ δυσμᾶς A<sup>c</sup> 28. ἀπὸ] ἐπὶ M. Schmidt 30.  
<τὸν ἀφιέντα> τὸν καρπὸν Castelvetro

proportion. Thus from genus to species, as: 'There lies 5 my ship'; for lying at anchor is a species of lying. From species to genus, as: 'Verily ten thousand noble deeds hath Odysseus wrought'; for ten thousand is a species of large number, and is here used for a large number generally. From species to species, as: 'With blade of bronze drew away the life,' and 'Cleft the water with the vessel of unyielding bronze.' Here ἀρύσαι, 'to draw away,' is used for ταμείν, 'to cleave,' and ταμείν again for ἀρύσαι,—each being a species of taking away. Analogy or proportion is when the second term is to the first as the fourth to the third. We may then use the fourth for the second, or the second for the fourth. Sometimes too we qualify the metaphor by adding the term to which the proper word is relative. Thus the cup is to Dionysus as the shield to Ares. The cup may, therefore, be called 'the shield of Dionysus,' and the shield 'the cup of Ares.' Or, again, as old age is to life, so is evening to day. Evening may therefore be called 'the old age of the day,' and old age, 'the evening of life,' or, in the phrase of Empedocles, 'life's setting sun.' For some of the terms of the proportion there is at times 7 no word in existence; still the metaphor may be used. For instance, to scatter seed is called sowing: but the action of the sun in scattering his rays is nameless. Still this process bears to the sun the same relation as sowing to the seed. Hence the expression of the poet 'sowing the god-created light.' There is another way in which 8 this kind of metaphor may be employed. We may apply an alien term, and then deny of that term one of its



οικείων τι, οιον εἰ τὴν ἀσπίδα εἴποι φιάλην μὴ Ἄρεως ἀλλ' ἄουον. <κόσμος δὲ . . . >. πεπονημένον δ' ἐστὶν ὁ ὅλως 9  
 35 μὴ καλούμενον ὑπὸ τινῶν αὐτὸς τίθεται ὁ ποιητής, (δοκεῖ γὰρ  
 ἔνια εἶναι τοιαῦτα) οἶον τὰ κέρατα ἐρνύγας καὶ τὸν ἱερέα  
 1458 a ἀρητήρα. ἐπεκτεταμένον δὲ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀφηρημένον τὸ μὲν ἐὰν 10  
 φωνήεντι μακροτέρῳ κεχρημένον ἢ τοῦ οἰκείου ἢ συλλαβῆ  
 ἐμβεβλημένη, τὸ δὲ ἂν ἀφηρημένον τι ἢ αὐτοῦ, ἐπεκτεταμένον  
 μὲν οἶον τὸ πόλεως πόλῆος καὶ τὸ Πηλείδου Πηληιάδεω,  
 5 ἀφηρημένον δὲ οἶον τὸ κρί καὶ τὸ δῶ καὶ “μία γίνεται ἀμ-  
 φοτέρων ὄψ.” ἐξηλλαγμένον δ' ἐστὶν ὅταν τοῦ ὀνομαζομένου 11  
 τὸ μὲν καταλείπη τὸ δὲ ποιῇ, οἶον τὸ “δεξιτερόν κατὰ μαζόν”  
 ἀντὶ τοῦ δεξιόν.

[αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν ὀνομάτων τὰ μὲν ἄρρενα τὰ δὲ θήλεα τὰ 12  
 10 δὲ μεταξὺ, ἄρρενα μὲν ὅσα τελευτᾶ εἰς τὸ Ν καὶ Ρ καὶ Σ  
 καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τούτου σύγκειται (ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν δύο, Ψ καὶ Ξ),  
 θήλεα δὲ ὅσα ἐκ τῶν φωνηέντων εἰς τε τὰ ἀεὶ μακρά, οἶον εἰς Η  
 καὶ Ω, καὶ τῶν ἐπεκτεινομένων εἰς Α· ὥστε ἴσα συμβαίνει  
 πλήθῃ εἰς ὅσα τὰ ἄρρενα καὶ τὰ θήλεα· τὸ γὰρ Ψ καὶ τὸ Ξ  
 15 <τῷ Σ> ταυτὰ ἐστίν. εἰς δὲ ἄφωνον οὐδὲν ὄνομα τελευτᾶ, οὐδὲ  
 εἰς φωνήεν βραχύ. εἰς δὲ τὸ Ι τρία μόνον, μέλι κόμμι πέπερι.  
 εἰς δὲ τὸ Τ πέντε. τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ εἰς ταῦτα καὶ Ν καὶ Σ.]

## XXII

Λέξεως δὲ ἀρετὴ σαφὴ καὶ μὴ ταπεινὴ εἶναι. σα-  
 20 ταπεινὴ μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ ἐκ τῶν κυρίων ὀνομάτων, ἀλλὰ  
 παράδειγμα δὲ ἡ Κλεοφώντος ποιήσις καὶ ἡ

38. ἀλλ' ἄουον Vettori: ἄλλα οἶνου (vel ἀλλ' οἶνου) codd. 34. <κόσμος  
 δὲ . . . > Maggi 1458 a 2. κεχρημένος Hermann ἦ] ἡ A<sup>c</sup>  
 συλλαβὴ ἐμβεβλημένη A<sup>c</sup> 3. ἀφήρη μὲν ἔντι ἡ A<sup>c</sup> 4. πόλεος A<sup>c</sup>  
 πηλείδου Parisinus 2038: πηλέος A<sup>c</sup>: Πηλέος <Πηλῆος καὶ τὸ Πηλείδου> M.  
 Schmidt 6. ὄψ Vettori; ὄης A<sup>c</sup> (i.e. ΟΙΙΣ vel ΟΨΙΣ) 10. καὶ Σ  
 Riccardianus 16 (confirm. Arabs): om. A<sup>c</sup> 14. πλήθῃ A<sup>c</sup>: πλήθει apogr.  
 15. τῷ Σ add. anon. ap. Tyrwhitt 17. post πέντε add. τὸ πῶν τὸ  
 νᾶπυ τὸ γόνυ τὸ δόρυ τὸ ἄστυ Riccardianus 16 ταῦτα <καὶ Α> καὶ Ν  
 <καὶ Ρ> καὶ Σ Morel

proper attributes; as if we were to call the shield, not 'the cup of Ares,' but 'the wineless cup.'

<An ornamental word . . . >

A newly-coined word is one which has never been even in local use, but is adopted by the poet himself. Some such words there appear to be: as *ἐρνύγες*, 'sprouters,' for *κέρατα*, 'horns,' and *ἀρητήρ*, 'supplicator,' for *ιερεύς*, 'priest.'

1458 a A word is lengthened when its own vowel is exchanged for a longer one, or when a syllable is inserted. A word is contracted when some part of it is removed. Instances of lengthening are,—*πόλῆος* for *πόλεως*, and *Πηληιάδεω* for *Πηλείδου*: of contraction,—*κρῖ*, *δῶ*, and *ῶψ*, as in *μία γίνεται ἀμφοτέρων ῶψ*.

An altered word is one in which part of the ordinary form is left unchanged, and part is re-cast; as in *δεξιτερὸν κατὰ μαζόν*, *δεξιτερόν* is for *δεξιόν*.

[Nouns in themselves are either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Masculine are such as end in *ν*, *ρ*, *ς*, or in some letter compounded with *ς*,—these being two, *ψ* and *ξ*. Feminine, such as end in vowels that are always long, namely *η* and *ω*, and—of vowels that admit of lengthening—those in *α*. Thus the number of letters in which nouns masculine and feminine end is the same; for *ψ* and *ξ* are equivalent to endings in *ς*. No noun ends in a mute or vowel short by nature. Three only end in *ι*,—*μέλι*, *κόμμι*, *πέπερι*: five end in *υ*. Neuter nouns end in these two latter vowels; also in *ν* and *ς*.]

XXII The perfection of style is to be clear without being mean. The clearest style is that which uses only current or proper words; at the same time it is mean:—witness the poetry of Cleophon and of Sthenelus. *That diction,*

Σθενέλου. σεμνή δὲ καὶ ἐξαλλάττουσα τὸ ἰδιωτικὸν ἢ τοῖς  
 ξενικοῖς κεχρημένη· ξενικὸν δὲ λέγω γλωτταν καὶ μετα-  
 φορὰν καὶ ἐπέκτασιν καὶ πᾶν τὸ παρὰ τὸ κύριον. ἀλλ' ἂν 2  
 τις ἅμα ἅπαντα τοιαῦτα ποιήσῃ, ἢ αἰνιγμα ἔσται ἢ βαρβα-  
 25 ρισμὸς· ἂν μὲν οὖν ἐκ μεταφορῶν, αἰνιγμα, ἐὰν δὲ ἐκ  
 γλωττῶν, βαρβαρισμὸς· αἰνιγματός τε γὰρ ἰδέα αὕτη ἐστί,  
 τὸ λέγοντα ὑπάρχοντα ἀδύνατα συνάψαι. κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν  
 τῶν <ἄλλων> ὀνομάτων σύνθεσιν οὐχ οἶόν τε τοῦτο ποιῆσαι  
 κατὰ δὲ τὴν μεταφορὰν ἐνδέχεται, οἷον “ἄνδρ' εἶδον πυρὶ χαλ-  
 30 κὸν ἐπ' ἀνέρι κολλησάντα,” καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα. ἐκ τῶν γλωτ-  
 τῶν βαρβαρισμὸς. δεῖ ἄρα κεκρᾶσθαί πως τούτοις· τὸ 3  
 μὲν γὰρ μὴ ἰδιωτικὸν ποιήσῃ μηδὲ ταπεινόν, οἷον ἢ γλωττα  
 καὶ ἢ μεταφορὰ καὶ ὁ κόσμος καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ εἰρημένα  
 εἶδη, τὸ δὲ κύριον τὴν σαφήνειαν. οὐκ ἐλάχιστον δὲ μέρος 4  
 1458 b συμβάλλεται εἰς τὸ σαφὲς τῆς λέξεως καὶ μὴ ἰδιωτικὸν  
 αἰ ἐπεκτάσεις καὶ ἀποκοπαὶ καὶ ἐξαλλαγαὶ τῶν ὀνομά-  
 των· διὰ μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἄλλως ἔχειν ἢ ὡς τὸ κύριον, παρὰ  
 τὸ εἰωθὸς γιγνόμενον, τὸ μὴ ἰδιωτικὸν ποιήσῃ, διὰ δὲ τὸ κοι-  
 5 νωνεῖν τοῦ εἰωθότος τὸ σαφὲς ἔσται. ὥστε οὐκ ὀρθῶς ψέγου- 5  
 σιν οἱ ἐπιτιμῶντες τῷ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ τῆς διαλέκτου καὶ δια-  
 κωμφοῦντες τὸν ποιητὴν, οἷον Εὐκλείδης ὁ ἀρχαῖος, ὡς  
 ῥάδιον ποιεῖν, εἴ τις δώσει ἐκτείνειν ἐφ' ὅποσον βούλεται,  
 ἱαμβοποιήσας ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ λέξει “Ἐπιχάρην εἶδον Μαρα-

24. ἅμα ἅπαντα Riccardianus 16, Parisinus 2038 : ἂν ἅπαντα A<sup>o</sup>: ἅπαντα al.  
 ποιήσῃ apogr. : ποιῆσαι A<sup>o</sup> 28. ἄλλων add. Margoliouth, collato Arabe  
 ‘reliqua nomina’: κυρίων add. Heinsius [σύνθεσιν] συνήθειαν Tucker  
 οὐχολοῦται A<sup>o</sup> 29. fort. μεταφορῶν Bywater ἴδον A<sup>o</sup> πυρὶ  
 χαλκὸν Vettori: πυρὶχαλκὸν codd. 30-31. ante vel post ἐκ — βαρ-  
 βαρισμὸς lacunam statuit Gomperz 31. κεκρᾶσθαι Maggi e cod. Lam-  
 pridii (‘si miscentur haec’ Arabs): κεκρᾶσθαι codd. cett. 1458 b l.  
 συμβάλλεται A<sup>o</sup>: συμβάλλονται apogr. 9. Ἐπιχάρην Bursian: ἦται χάριν A<sup>o</sup>:  
 ἐπι χάριν Σ, ut videtur (‘appellatum cum favore’ Arabs) εἶδον apogr. :  
 ἴδον A<sup>o</sup>: ἰδὼν Gomperz

on the other hand, is lofty and raised above the common- ←  
 place which employs unusual words. By unusual, I  
 mean strange (or rare) words, metaphorical, lengthened,—  
 anything, in short, that differs from the normal idiom.  
 Yet a style wholly composed of such words is either a 2  
 riddle or a jargon; a riddle, if it consists of metaphors; RIDDLE  
 a jargon, if it consists of strange (or rare) words. For the  
 essence of a riddle is to express true facts under im- — ★  
 possible combinations. Now this cannot be done by any  
 arrangement of ordinary words, but by the use of meta-  
 phor it can. Such is the riddle:—‘A man I saw who  
 on another man had glued the bronze by aid of fire,’ and  
 others of the same kind. A diction that is made up of  
 strange (or rare) terms is a jargon. A certain infusion, 3  
 therefore, of these elements is necessary to style; for the  
 strange (or rare) word, the metaphorical, the ornamental,  
 and the other kinds above mentioned, will raise it above ←  
 the commonplace and mean, while the use of proper  
 words will make it perspicuous. But nothing contributes 4  
 1458 b more to produce a clearness of diction that is remote  
 from commonness than the lengthening, contraction, and  
 alteration of words. For by deviating in exceptional  
 cases from the normal idiom, the language will gain  
 distinction; while, at the same time, the partial con-  
 formity with usage will give perspicuity. The critics, 5  
 therefore, are in error who censure these licenses of  
 speech, and hold the author up to ridicule. Thus  
 Euclides, the elder, declared that it would be an easy  
 matter to be a poet if you might lengthen syllables at  
 will. He caricatured the practice in the very form of  
 his diction, as in the verse:

10 θῶνάδε βαδίζοντα,” καὶ “οὐκ ἂν γ’ ἐράμενος τὸν ἐκείνου ἐλ-  
 λέβορον.” τὸ μὲν οὖν φαίνεσθαι πῶς χρώμενον τούτῳ τῷ<sup>6</sup>  
 τρόπῳ γελοῖον· τὸ δὲ μέτριον κοινὸν ἀπάντων ἐστὶ τῶν με-  
 ρῶν· καὶ γὰρ μεταφοραῖς καὶ γλώτταις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 εἶδεσι χρώμενος ἀπρεπῶς καὶ ἐπίτηδες ἐπὶ τὰ γελοῖα τὸ  
 15 αὐτὸ ἂν ἀπεργάσαιτο. τὸ δὲ ἀρμόττον ὅσον διαφέρει ἐπὶ 7  
 τῶν ἐπῶν θεωρεῖσθω ἐντιθεμένων τῶν <κυρίων> ὀνομάτων εἰς  
 τὸ μέτρον. καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γλώττης δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν μεταφορῶν  
 καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἰδεῶν μετατιθεῖς ἂν τις τὰ κύρια ὀνόματα  
 κατίδοι ὅτι ἀληθῆ λέγομεν· οἶον τὸ αὐτὸ ποιήσαντος ἰαμ-  
 20 βεῖον Αἰσχύλου καὶ Εὐριπίδου, ἐν δὲ μόνον ὄνομα μεταθέν-  
 τος, ἀντὶ [κυρίου] εἰωθότος γλώτταν, τὸ μὲν φαίνεται καλὸν  
 τὸ δ’ εὐτελές. Αἰσχύλος μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῷ Φιλοκτῆτῃ ἐποίησε  
 φαγέδαινα <δ’> ἥ μου σάρκας ἐσθίει ποδός,  
 ὁ δὲ ἀντὶ τοῦ ἐσθίει τὸ θοινᾶται μετέθηκεν. καὶ  
 25 νῦν δὲ μ’ ἐὼν ὀλίγος τε καὶ οὐτιδανὸς καὶ ἀεικῆς,<sup>1</sup>  
 εἴ τις λέγοι τὰ κύρια μετατιθεῖς  
 νῦν δὲ μ’ ἐὼν μικρός τε καὶ ἀσθениκὸς καὶ ἀειδῆς·

<sup>1</sup> *Odyss.* ix. 515, νῦν δὲ μ’ ἐὼν ὀλίγος τε καὶ οὐτιδανὸς καὶ ἀεικῆς.

10. ἂν γ’ ἐράμενος *apogr.*: ἂν γεράμενος *A°*: ἂν γευσάμενος *Tyrwhitt*: ἂν  
 πριάμενος *Gomperz* 11. πῶς *A°*: ἀπρεπῶς *Twining*: πάντως *Hermann*  
 12. μέτριον *Spengel*: μέτρον *codd.* 14. ἐπὶ τὰ *apogr.*: ἐπειτα  
*A°* ἐπὶ τὰ γελοῖα *secl. Gomperz* 15. ἀρμόττον *apogr.*: ἀρμότ-  
 τοντος *A°* 16. ἐπῶν] ἐπεκτάσεων *Tyrwhitt* <κυρίων> *coni.*  
*Vahlen* 19. ἰάμβιον *A°* 20. Αἰσχύλῳ Εὐριπίδου *Essen*: Εὐριπίδου καὶ  
 Αἰσχύλου *Richards* μεταθέντος *Parisinus 2038*: μετατιθέντος *A°*  
 21. αὐτὸν κυρίου αὐτὸν εἰωθότος *secludendum esse coni. Vahlen* <καὶ> εἰωθότος  
*Heinsius* 23. φαγέδαινα δ’ ἢ *Ritter*: φαγέδαινα ἢ *apogr.*: φαγάδαινα ἢ *A°*:  
 φαγέδαιναν ἢ *Hermann*: φαγέδαιν’ ἀεί *Nauck* 25. δὲ μὲν *A°* ἀεικῆς  
*Castelvetro* (‘ut non conveniat’ *Arabs*): ἀειδῆς *codd.*: ἀεικῆς (*cum var. lect.*  
 ἀεικῆς) *Od. ix. 515* 27. δὲ μὲν *A°* μικρὸς δὲ *A°*

Ἐπιχάρην εἶδον Μαραθῶνάδε βαδίζοντα,

or,

οὐκ ἂν γ' ἐράμενος τὸν ἐκείνου ἐλλέβορον.

To employ such license at all obtrusively is, no doubt, grotesque; but in any mode of poetic diction there must be moderation. Even metaphors, strange (or rare) words, or any similar forms of speech, would produce the like effect if used without propriety, and with the express purpose of being ludicrous. How great a difference is made by the appropriate use of lengthening, may be seen in Epic poetry by the insertion of ordinary forms in the verse. So, again, if we take a strange (or rare) word, a metaphor, or any similar mode of expression, and replace it by the current or proper term, the truth of our observation will be manifest. For example Aeschylus and Euripides each composed the same iambic line. But the alteration of a single word by Euripides, who employed the rarer term instead of the ordinary one, makes one verse appear beautiful and the other trivial. Aeschylus in his *Philoctetes* says:

φαγέδαινα <δ'> ἧ μου σάρκας ἐσθίει ποδός.

Euripides substitutes *θoinᾶται* 'feasts on' for *ἐσθίει* 'feeds on.' Again, in the line,

νῦν δέ μ' ἐὼν ὀλίγος τε καὶ οὐτιδανὸς καὶ ἀεικής,

the difference will be felt if we substitute the common words,

νῦν δέ μ' ἐὼν μικρός τε καὶ ἀσθενικὸς καὶ ἀειδής.

καὶ

δίφρον ἀεικέλιον καταθείς ὀλίγην τε τράπεζαν,<sup>1</sup>  
 30 δίφρον μοχθηρὸν καταθείς μικράν τε τράπεζαν·  
 καὶ τὸ “ἡῖόνες βοῶσιν,”<sup>2</sup> ἡῖόνες κράζουσιν. ἔτι δὲ Ἀριφρά- 8  
 δης τοὺς τραγωδοὺς ἐκωμῶδει, ὅτι ἂ οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι ἐν τῇ δια-  
 λέκτῳ τούτοις χρῶνται, οἷον τὸ δωμάτων ἄπο ἀλλὰ μὴ  
 ἀπὸ δωμάτων, καὶ τὸ σέθεν καὶ τὸ ἐγὼ δέ νιν καὶ τὸ  
 1459 a Ἀχιλλέως πέρι ἀλλὰ μὴ περὶ Ἀχιλλέως, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα  
 τοιαῦτα. διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ εἶναι ἐν τοῖς κυρίοις ποιεῖ τὸ μὴ  
 ιδιωτικὸν ἐν τῇ λέξει ἅπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἐκείνος δὲ τοῦτο  
 ἠγνόει. ἔστιν δὲ μέγα μὲν τὸ ἐκάστῳ τῶν εἰρημένων πρεπόν- 9  
 5 τως χρῆσθαι, καὶ διπλοῖς ὀνόμασι καὶ γλώτταις, πολὺ δὲ  
 μέγιστον τὸ μεταφορικὸν εἶναι. μόνον γὰρ τοῦτο οὔτε παρ’  
 ἄλλου ἔστι λαβεῖν εὐφύϊας τε σημεῖόν ἐστι· τὸ γὰρ εὖ  
 μεταφέρειν τὸ τὸ ὅμοιον θεωρεῖν ἔστιν. τῶν δ’ ὀνομάτων τὰ 10  
 μὲν διπλᾶ μάλιστα ἀρμόττει τοῖς διθυράμβοις, αἱ δὲ γλώτται  
 10 τοῖς ἠρωικοῖς, αἱ δὲ μεταφοραὶ τοῖς ἱαμβείοις. καὶ ἐν  
 μὲν τοῖς ἠρωικοῖς ἅπαντα χρήσιμα τὰ εἰρημένα, ἐν δὲ τοῖς  
 ἱαμβείοις διὰ τὸ ὅτι μάλιστα λέξιν μιμῆσθαι ταῦτα ἀρ-  
 μόττει τῶν ὀνομάτων ὅσοις κἂν ἐν λόγοις τις χρή-  
 15 σαιτο· ἔστι δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα τὸ κύριον καὶ μεταφορὰ καὶ κόσμος.  
 περὶ μὲν οὖν τραγωδίας καὶ τῆς ἐν τῷ πράττειν μιμή-  
 σεως ἔστω ἡμῖν ἱκανὰ τὰ εἰρημένα.

<sup>1</sup> *Odys.* xx. 259, δίφρον ἀεικέλιον καταθείς ὀλίγην τε τράπεζαν.

<sup>2</sup> *Iliad* xvii. 265.

29. ἀεικέλιον Parisinus 2038: τ' ἀεικέλιον A<sup>c</sup>: τ' αικέλιον Vahlen 31.  
 τὸ ἴωνες βοῶσιν ἢ ἴωνες A<sup>c</sup> 32. εἴποι apogr.: εἴπη A<sup>c</sup> 1459 a 4.  
 τὸ apogr.: τῶν A<sup>c</sup> 10 et 12. ἱαμβίοις A<sup>c</sup> 13. κἂν Harles: καὶ codd.  
 ὅσοις post ἐν add. A<sup>c</sup>: om. apogr.: τοῖς Gomperz: ὁδοῖς Σ, ut videtur  
 (Ellis) τις apogr.: τί A<sup>c</sup>

Or, if for the line,

*δίφρον ἀεικέλιον καταθείς ὀλίγην τε τράπεζαν,*

we read,

*δίφρον μοχθηρὸν καταθείς μικρὰν τε τράπεζαν.*

Or, for *ἡϊόνες βοόωσιν, ἡϊόνες κρᾶζουσιν.*

Again, A<sup>1459 a</sup>riphrades ridiculed the tragedians for using 8 phrases which no one would employ in ordinary speech: for example, *δωμάτων ἀπο* instead of *ἀπὸ δωμάτων*, *σέθεν, ἐγὼ δέ νιν, Ἀχιλλέως περί* instead of *περὶ Ἀχιλλέως*, and the like. It is precisely because such phrases are not part of the current idiom that they give distinction to the style. This, however, he failed to see.

It is a great matter to observe propriety in these 9 several modes of expression—compound words, strange (or rare) words, and so forth. But the greatest thing by far is to have a command of metaphor. This alone cannot be imparted by another; it is the mark of genius, —for to make good metaphors implies an eye for resemblances.

Of the various kinds of words, the compound are 10 best adapted to dithyrambs, rare words to heroic poetry, metaphors to iambic. In heroic poetry, indeed, all these varieties are serviceable. But in iambic verse, which reproduces, as far as may be, familiar speech, the most appropriate words are those which are found even in prose. These are,—the current or proper, the meta- phorical, the ornamental.

Concerning Tragedy and imitation by means of action this may suffice.



XXIII Περὶ δὲ τῆς διηγηματικῆς κἀν ἐν<ι> μέτρῳ μιμητικῆς, ὅτι δεῖ τοὺς μύθους καθάπερ ἐν ταῖς τραγωδίαις συνιστάναι δραματικούς καὶ περὶ μίαν πρᾶξιν ὄλην καὶ τελείαν, ἔχουσαν 20 ἀρχὴν καὶ μέσα καὶ τέλος, ἕν' ὡσπερ ζῶον ἐν ὄλον ποιῆ τὴν οἰκείαν ἡδονήν, δῆλον, καὶ μὴ ὁμοίας ἱστορίαις τὰς συνθέσεις εἶναι, ἐν αἷς ἀνάγκη οὐχὶ μιᾶς πράξεως ποιεῖσθαι δῆλωσιν ἀλλ' ἐνὸς χρόνου, ὅσα ἐν τούτῳ συνέβη περὶ ἓνα ἢ πλείους, ὧν ἕκαστον ὡς ἔτυχεν ἔχει πρὸς ἄλληλα. ὡσπερ 2  
25 γὰρ κατὰ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἢ τ' ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ἐγένετο ναυμαχία καὶ ἡ ἐν Σικελίᾳ Καρχηδονίων μάχη οὐδὲν πρὸς τὸ αὐτὸ συντείνουσαι τέλος, οὕτω καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐφεξῆς χρόνοις ἐνίστε γίνεται θάτερον μετὰ θάτερον, ἐξ ὧν ἐν οὐδὲν γίνεται τέλος. σχεδὸν δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ποιητῶν τοῦτο 30 δρῶσι. διό, ὡσπερ εἶπομεν ἤδη, καὶ ταύτῃ θεσπέσιος ἂν 3 φανείη Ὅμηρος παρὰ τοὺς ἄλλους, τῷ μὴδὲ τὸν πόλεμον καίπερ ἔχοντα ἀρχὴν καὶ τέλος ἐπιχειρήσαι ποιεῖν ὄλον· λίαν γὰρ ἂν μέγας καὶ οὐκ εὐσύνοπτος ἔμελλεν ἔσσεσθαι, ἢ τῷ μεγέθει μετριάζοντα καταπεπλεγμένον τῇ ποικιλίᾳ.  
35 νῦν δ' ἐν μέρος ἀπολαβῶν ἐπεισοδίοις κέχρηται αὐτῶν πολλοῖς, οἷον νεῶν καταλόγῳ καὶ ἄλλοις ἐπεισοδίοις, οἷς διαλαμβάνει τὴν ποιήσιν. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι περὶ ἓνα ποιούσι 1459 b καὶ περὶ ἓνα χρόνον καὶ μίαν πρᾶξιν πολυμερῆ, οἷον ὁ

17. κἀν ἐνὶ μέτρῳ scripsi (cf. 1449 b 11, 1459 b 32): καὶ ἐν μέτρῳ codd.: καὶ ἐν ἑξαμέτρῳ Heinsius 18. συνιστάναι A<sup>c</sup> (cf. 1453 b 4, 1457 b 12): συν-εστάναι conl. Vahlen 20. ποιεῖ A<sup>c</sup> 21. ὁμοίας ἱστορίας τὰς συνθέσεις Dacier (confirmat aliquatenus Arabs): ὁμοίας ἱστορίας τὰς συνήθειαι codd.: οἷαι ἱστορίας τὰς συνήθειαι M<sup>c</sup>Vey 25. Σαλαμῖνι A<sup>c</sup> 26. ναυμαχία apogr.: ναύμαχος A<sup>c</sup> 28. μετὰ θάτερον Parisinus 2038: μετὰ θατέρου A<sup>c</sup> 31. τῷ Riccardianus 16: τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 33-34. μέγα (rec. corr. μέγας)—εὐσύνοπτος—μετριάζοντα A<sup>c</sup>: μέγα—εὐσύνοπτον—μετρίαζον Bursian 35. αὐτῶν secl. Christ: αὐτοῦ Heinsius 36. οἷς Riccardianus 16: οἷς pr. A<sup>c</sup>

[XIII] As to that poetic imitation which is narrative in ~~IMITATION~~  
 form and employs a single metre, the plot manifestly  
 ought, as in a tragedy, to be constructed on dramatic } ACTION  
 principles. It should have for its subject a single  
 action, whole and complete, with a beginning, a middle,  
 and an end. It will thus resemble a single and coherent  
 picture of a living being, and produce the pleasure  
 proper to it. It will differ in structure from historical  
 compositions, which of necessity present not a single  
 action, but a single period, and all that happened within  
 that period to one person or to many, little connected  
 together as the events may be. For as the sea-fight at 2—  
 Salamis and the battle with the Carthaginians in Sicily  
 took place at the same time, but did not tend to any one  
 result, so in the sequence of events, one thing sometimes  
 follows another, and yet no single result is thereby  
 produced. Such is the practice, we may say, of  
 most poets. Here again, then, as has been already 3  
 observed, the transcendent excellence of Homer is ~~HOMER~~  
 manifest. He never attempts to make the whole war of  
 Troy the subject of his poem, though that war had a  
 beginning and an end. It would have been too vast a  
theme, and not easily embraced in a single view. If,  
 again, he had kept it within moderate limits, it must  
 have been over-complicated by the variety of the in-  
 cidents. As it is, he detaches a single portion, and  
 admits as episodes many events from the general story  
 of the war—such as the Catalogue of the ships and  
 others—thus diversifying the poem. All other poets  
 1469 b take a single hero, a single period, or an action single  
 indeed, but with a multiplicity of parts. Thus did the

τὰ Κύπρια ποιήσας καὶ τὴν μικρὰν Ἰλιάδα. τοιγαροῦν ἐκ<sup>4</sup>  
 μὲν Ἰλιάδος καὶ Ὀδυσσείας μία τραγωδία ποιεῖται ἑκα-  
 τέρας ἢ δύο μόναι, ἐκ δὲ Κυπρίων πολλαὶ καὶ τῆς μι-  
 5 κρῶς Ἰλιάδος [πλέον] ὀκτώ, οἶον ὄπλων κρίσις, Φιλοκτή-  
 τῆς, Νεοπτόλεμος, Εὐρύπυλος, πτωχεία, Λάκαιναι, Ἰλίου  
 πέρσις καὶ ἀπόπλους [καὶ Σίνων καὶ Τρφάδες].

XXIV Ἔτι δὲ τὰ εἶδη ταῦτα δεῖ ἔχειν τὴν ἐποποιίαν τῇ τραγω-  
 δίᾳ, ἢ γὰρ ἀπλὴν ἢ πεπλεγμένην ἢ ἠθικὴν ἢ παθητικὴν.  
 10 καὶ τὰ μέρη ἕξω μελοποιίας καὶ ὄψεως ταῦτά· καὶ γὰρ  
 περιπετειῶν δεῖ καὶ ἀναγνωρίσεων καὶ παθημάτων· ἔτι  
 τὰς διανοίας καὶ τὴν λέξιν ἔχειν καλῶς. οἷς ἅπασιν<sup>2</sup>  
 Ὅμηρος κέχρηται καὶ πρῶτος καὶ ἰκανῶς. καὶ γὰρ καὶ  
 τῶν ποιημάτων ἐκάτερον συνέστηκεν ἢ μὲν Ἰλιάς ἀπλοῦν  
 15 καὶ παθητικόν, ἢ δὲ Ὀδύσσεια πεπλεγμένον (ἀναγνώρισις  
 γὰρ διόλου) καὶ ἠθικὴ· πρὸς γὰρ τούτοις λέξει καὶ διανοία  
 πάντα ὑπερβέβληκεν. διαφέρει δὲ κατὰ τε τῆς συστάσεως<sup>3</sup>  
 τὸ μῆκος ἢ ἐποποιία καὶ τὸ μέτρον. τοῦ μὲν οὖν μήκους ὄρος  
 ἰκανὸς ὁ εἰρημένος· δύνασθαι γὰρ δεῖ συνορᾶσθαι τὴν ἀρχὴν  
 20 καὶ τὸ τέλος. εἴη δ' ἂν τοῦτο, εἰ τῶν μὲν ἀρχαίων ἐλάτ-  
 τους αἱ συστάσεις εἴεν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ πλῆθος τραγωδιῶν τῶν  
 εἰς μίαν ἀκρόασιν τιθεμένων παρήκοιεν. ἔχει δὲ πρὸς τὸ<sup>4</sup>  
 ἐπεκτείνεσθαι τὸ μέγεθος πολὺ τι ἢ ἐποποιία ἴδιον διὰ  
 τὸ ἐν μὲν τῇ τραγωδίᾳ μὴ ἐνδέχασθαι ἅμα πραπτόμενα

1459 b 2. Κύπρια Reiz : κυπρικὰ A<sup>c</sup> 4. μόναι pr. A<sup>c</sup> 5 et 7. πλέον  
 et καὶ Σίνων καὶ Τρφάδες secl. Hermann 7. πρωϊάδες pr. A<sup>c</sup> (τ sup. scr.  
 m. rec.) 8. ἔτι δὲ bis A<sup>c</sup> δεῖ apogr. : δὴ A<sup>c</sup> 9. ἠθικὴν om.  
 Σ 11. καὶ ἠθῶν post ἀναγνωρίσεων add. Susemihl 13. ἰκανῶς apogr. :  
 ἰκανὸς A<sup>c</sup> 14. ποιημάτων A<sup>c</sup> 15. ἀναγνωρίσεις Christ 16. ἠθικόν  
 corr. rec. m. A<sup>c</sup> γὰρ A<sup>c</sup> : δὲ apogr. 17. πάντας apogr. 21. πρὸς  
 δὲ apogr. : πρόσθε A<sup>c</sup> τὸ ante τραγωδιῶν add. Tucker 22. fort.  
 καθιεμένων Richards

author of the Cypria and of the Little Iliad. For this <sup>4</sup> — P reason the Iliad and the Odyssey each furnish the subject of one tragedy, or, at most, of two; while the Cypria supplies materials for many, and the Little Iliad for eight—the Award of the Arms, the Philoctetes, the Neoptolemus, the Eurypylus, the Mendicant Odysseus, the Laconian Women, the Fall of Ilium, the Departure of the Fleet.

XXIV Again, Epic poetry must have as many kinds as Tragedy: it must be simple, or complex, or 'ethical,' or 'pathetic.' The parts also, with the exception of song and scenery, are the same; for it requires Reversals of Intention, Recognitions, and Tragic Incidents. Moreover, the thoughts and the diction must be artistic. <sup>2</sup> In all these respects Homer is our earliest and sufficient model. Indeed each of his poems has a twofold character. The Iliad is at once simple and 'pathetic,' and the Odyssey — <sup>1</sup> — <sup>2</sup> complex (for Recognition scenes run through it), and at the same time 'ethical.' Moreover, in diction and thought he is supreme.

Epic poetry differs from Tragedy in the scale on <sup>3</sup> which it is constructed, and in its metre. As regards scale or length, we have already laid down an adequate limit:—the beginning and the end must be capable of being brought within a single view. This condition will be satisfied by poems on a smaller scale than the old epics, and answering in length to the group of tragedies presented at a single sitting.

Epic poetry has, however, a great—a special— <sup>4</sup> capacity for enlarging its dimensions, and we can see the reason. In Tragedy we cannot imitate several lines of

25 πολλὰ μέρη μμείσθαι ἀλλὰ τὸ ἐπὶ τῆς σκηνῆς καὶ τῶν  
 ὑποκριτῶν μέρος μόνον· ἐν δὲ τῇ ἐποποιίᾳ διὰ τὸ διήγησον  
 εἶναι ἔστι πολλὰ μέρη ἅμα ποιεῖν περαινόμενα, ἕφ' ὧν  
 οἰκείων ὄντων αὔξεται ὁ τοῦ ποιήματος ὄγκος. ὥστε τοῦτ'  
 ἔχει τὸ ἀγαθὸν εἰς μεγαλοπρέπειαν καὶ τὸ μεταβάλλειν τὸν  
 30 ἀκούοντα καὶ ἐπεισοδιοῦν ἀνομοίοις ἐπεισοδίοις· τὸ γὰρ  
 ὁμοιον ταχὺ πληροῦν ἐκπίπτειν ποιεῖ τὰς τραγῳδίας. τὸ δὲ 5  
 μέτρον τὸ ἥρωικὸν ἀπὸ τῆς πείρας ἤρμοκεν. εἰ γὰρ τις ἐν  
 ἄλλῳ τινὶ μέτρῳ διηγηματικὴν μίμησιν ποιοῖτο ἢ ἐν πολλοῖς,  
 ἀπρεπὲς ἂν φαίνοιτο· τὸ γὰρ ἥρωικὸν στασιμώτατον καὶ  
 35 ὀγκωδέστατον τῶν μέτρων ἐστίν (διὸ καὶ γλώττας καὶ μετα-  
 φορὰς δέχεται μάλιστα· περιττὴ γὰρ καὶ <ταύτῃ> ἡ διηγη-  
 ματικὴ μίμησις τῶν ἄλλων). τὸ δὲ ἱαμβεῖον καὶ τετρά-  
 1460 α μτρον κινητικά, τὸ μὲν ὀρχηστικὸν τὸ δὲ πρακτικόν. ἔτι δὲ 6  
 ἀτοπώτερον, εἰ μινυοὶ τις αὐτά, ὥσπερ Χαιρήμων. διὸ  
 οὐδεὶς μακρὰν σύστασιν ἐν ἄλλῳ πεποίηκεν ἢ τῷ ἠρώφῳ, ἀλλ'  
 ὥσπερ εἴπομεν αὐτῇ ἡ φύσις διδάσκει τὸ ἀρμόττον [αὐτῇ]  
 5 [δι]αίρεισθαι. "Ὀμηρος δὲ ἄλλα τε πολλὰ ἄξιος ἐπαινέισθαι 7  
 καὶ δὴ καὶ ὅτι μόνος τῶν ποιητῶν οὐκ ἄγνοεὶ δ' δεῖ ποιεῖν  
 αὐτόν. αὐτὸν γὰρ δεῖ τὸν ποιητὴν ἐλάχιστα λέγειν· οὐ γὰρ  
 ἐστὶ κατὰ ταῦτα μιμητής. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι αὐτοὶ μὲν δι' ὅλου

29. fort. [τὸ] ἀγαθὸν Bywater 33. διηγηματικὴν apogr.: διηγητικὴν A<sup>c</sup>  
 36. post καὶ add. ταύτῃ Twining: τηδὶ Tucker 37. μίμησις apogr.:  
 κίνησις A<sup>c</sup> ἱαμβίον A<sup>c</sup> 1460 a 1. κινητικά Ald.: κινητικαὶ A<sup>c</sup>:  
 κινητικά καὶ Vahlen: κινητικά, ei Gomperz 2. μινυοὶ Ald.: μινυοὶ  
 apogr.: μινυοὶ A<sup>c</sup> (fuit μη, et η extremum in litura): μη γνώη Σ (cf. Arab.  
 'si quis nesciret') 3. τῷ τὸ A<sup>c</sup> 4. αὐτῇ apogr.: αὐτῇ A<sup>c</sup>: secl.  
 Gomperz 5. αἰρεῖσθαι Bonitz (confirmare videtur Arabs): διαίρεισθαι A<sup>c</sup>:  
 ἀεὶ αἰρεῖσθαι Tucker

actions carried on at one and the same time; we must confine ourselves to the action on the stage and the part taken by the players. But in Epic poetry, owing to the narrative form, many events simultaneously transacted can be presented; and these, if relevant to the subject, add mass and dignity to the poem. The Epic has here an advantage, and one that conduces to grandeur of effect, to diverting the mind of the hearer, and relieving the story with varying episodes. For sameness of incident soon produces satiety, and makes tragedies fail on the stage.

As for the metre, the heroic measure has proved its 5 fitness by the test of experience. If a narrative poem in any other metre or in many metres were now composed, it would be found incongruous. For of all measures the heroic is the stateliest and the most massive; and hence it most readily admits rare words and metaphors, which is another point in which the narrative form of imitation stands alone. On the other 1460 a hand, the iambic and the trochaic tetrameter are stirring measures, the latter being akin to dancing, the former expressive of action. Still more absurd would it be to 6 mix together different metres, as was done by Chaeremon. Hence no one has ever composed a poem on a great scale in any other than heroic verse. Nature herself, as we have said, teaches the choice of the proper measure.

Homer, admirable in all respects, has the special merit 7 of being the only poet who rightly appreciates the part he should take himself. The poet should speak as little as possible in his own person, for it is not this that makes him an imitator. Other poets appear themselves upon

ἀγωνίζονται, μμούνται δὲ ὀλίγα καὶ ὀλιγάκις· ὁ δὲ ὀλίγα  
 10 φροιμιασάμενος εὐθὺς εἰσάγει ἄνδρα ἢ γυναῖκα ἢ ἄλλο τι  
 [ἦθος] καὶ οὐδέν' ἀθήη ἀλλ' ἔχοντα ἦθη. δεῖ μὲν οὖν ἐν ταῖς 8  
 τραγωδίαις ποιεῖν τὸ θαυμαστόν, μᾶλλον δ' ἐνδέχεται ἐν  
 τῇ ἐποποιίᾳ τὸ ἄλογον, δι' ὃ συμβαίνει μάλιστα τὸ θαυ-  
 μαστόν, διὰ τὸ μὴ ὁρᾶν εἰς τὸν πρᾶττοντα· ἐπεὶ τὰ περὶ  
 15 τὴν Ἔκτορος διώξιν ἐπὶ σκηνῆς ὄντα γελοῖα ἂν φανεῖη, οἱ  
 μὲν ἐστῶτες καὶ οὐ διώκοντες, ὁ δὲ ἀνανεύων, ἐν δὲ τοῖς  
 ἔπεσιν λανθάνει. τὸ δὲ θαυμαστόν ἡδύ· σημεῖον δέ· πάντες  
 γὰρ προστιθέντες ἀπαγγέλλουσιν ὡς χαριζόμενοι. δεδίδαχεν 9  
 δὲ μάλιστα Ὅμηρος καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ψευδῆ λέγειν ὡς δεῖ.  
 20 ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο παραλογισμός. οἴονται γὰρ ἄνθρωποι, ὅταν  
 τουδὶ ὄντος τοδὶ ἦ ἢ γινομένου γίνηται, εἰ τὸ ὕστερον ἔστιν,  
 καὶ τὸ πρότερον εἶναι ἢ γίνεσθαι· τοῦτο δὲ ἔστι ψεῦδος. διὸ  
 δῆ, ἂν τὸ πρῶτον ψεῦδος, ἀλλ' οὐδέ, τοῦτου ὄντος, ἀνάγκη  
 <κάκεινο> εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι [ἦ] προσθεῖναι· διὰ γὰρ τὸ τοῦτο  
 25 εἰδέναι ἀληθές ὄν, παραλογίζεται ἡμῶν ἢ ψυχῆ καὶ τὸ πρῶτον  
 ὡς ὄν. παράδειγμα δὲ τούτου ἐκ τῶν Νίπτρων. προαιρεῖσθαί 10  
 τε δεῖ ἀδύνατα εἰκότα μᾶλλον ἢ δυνατὰ ἀπίθανα· τοὺς τε λόγους  
 μὴ συνίστασθαι ἐκ μερῶν ἀλόγων, ἀλλὰ μάλιστα μὲν μη-

11. ἦθος codd., Σ: secl. Reiz: εἶδος Bursian οὐδέν' ἀθήη Vettori: οὐδεναθήη  
 Urbinas 47: οὐδένα ἦθη A<sup>c</sup> ἦθη] fort. ἦθος Christ κὰν ταῖς  
 Gomperz 13. ἄλογον Vettori: ἀνάλογον codd., Σ δι' ὃ Parisinus  
 2038: διὸ codd. cett. 14. ἐπεὶ apogr.: ἔπειτα A<sup>c</sup>, Σ 21. τοῦ δῖοντος  
 pr. A<sup>c</sup> τοδὶ ἦ ἢ apogr.: τὸ δι' ἦν pr. A<sup>c</sup> (τὸ δι' ἦ corr. rec. m.) 22.  
 γενέσθαι coni. Christ 23. δῆ] δεῖ Bonitz ἄλλου δὲ A<sup>c</sup> (ἄλλ' οὐδὲ  
 corr. rec. m.): ἄλλο δὲ codd. Robortelli: ἄλλο δ' ὃ Vahlen: ἄλλο, ὃ Christ  
 23-24. cum verbis ἀλλ' οὐδὲ—ἀνάγκη—προσθεῖναι contulerim Rhet. i. 2. 13,  
 1367 a 17, ἐὰν γὰρ ἦ τι τούτων γνώριμον, οὐδὲ δεῖ λέγειν· αὐτὸς γὰρ τοῦτο  
 προστίθησιν ὁ ἀκροατής, et 18, τὸ δ' ὅτι στεφανίτης τὰ Ὀλύμπια, οὐδὲ δεῖ προσ-  
 θεῖναι 24. κάκεινο add. Tucker ἢ secl. Bonitz: ἦ Vahlen: ἦν  
 Tucker 26. τούτου codex Robortelli: τούτο A<sup>c</sup>: τούτων apogr.: τοῦτο  
 <τὸ> Spengel νίπτρω A<sup>c</sup>

the scene throughout, and imitate but little and rarely. Homer, after a few prefatory words, at once brings in a man, or woman, or other personage; none of them wanting in characteristic qualities, but each with a character of his own.

The element of the wonderful is admitted in Tragedy. 8 — ★  
 The irrational, on which the wonderful depends for its chief effects, has wider scope in Epic poetry, because there the person acting is not seen. Thus, the pursuit of Hector would be ludicrous if placed upon the stage—the Greeks standing still and not joining in the pursuit, and Achilles waving them back. But in the Epic poem the absurdity passes unnoticed. Now the wonderful is pleasing: as may be inferred from the fact that, in telling a story, every one adds something startling of his own, knowing that his hearers like it. It is Homer who 9  
 has chiefly taught other poets the art of telling lies ← UFS  
skilfully. The secret of it lies in a fallacy. For, assuming that if one thing is or becomes, a second is or becomes, men imagine that, if the second is, the first likewise is or becomes. But this is a false inference. Hence, where the first thing is untrue, it is quite unnecessary, provided the second be true, to add that the first is or has become. For the mind, knowing the second to be true, falsely infers the truth of the first. There is an example of this in the Bath Scene of the Odyssey.

Accordingly, the poet should prefer probable im- 10  
possibilities to improbable possibilities. The tragic plot must not be composed of irrational parts. Everything — ★



δὲν ἔχειν ἄλογον, εἰ δὲ μή, ἔξω τοῦ μυθεύματος, ὥσπερ  
 30 Οἰδίπους τὸ μὴ εἶδέναι πῶς ὁ Λάιος ἀπέθανεν, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἐν  
 τῷ δράματι, ὥσπερ ἐν Ἡλέκτρα οἱ τὰ Πύθια ἀπαγγέλλον-  
 τες, ἢ ἐν Μυσοῖς ὁ ἄφρωνος ἐκ Τηγέας εἰς τὴν Μυσίαν ἦκων·  
 ὥστε τὸ λέγειν ὅτι ἀνήρητο ἂν ὁ μῦθος γελοῖον· ἐξ ἀρχῆς  
 γὰρ οὐ δεῖ συρίστασθαι τοιούτους. ἂν δὲ θῆ καὶ φαίνεται  
 35 εὐλογωτέως, ἐνδέχασθαι καὶ ἄτοπον <ὄν>· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ ἐν  
 Ὀδυσσεΐᾳ ἄλογα τὰ περὶ τὴν ἔκθεσιν ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἦν ἀνεκτὰ  
 100 ὁ δὴλον ἂν γένοιτο, εἰ αὐτὰ φαῦλος ποιητῆς ποιήσειε· νῦν δὲ  
 τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀγαθοῖς ὁ ποιητῆς ἀφανίζει ἠδύτων τὸ ἄτοπον.  
 τῇ δὲ λέξει δεῖ διαπονεῖν ἐν τοῖς ἀργοῖς μέρεσιν καὶ μήτε 11  
 ἠθικοῖς μήτε διανοητικοῖς· ἀποκρύπτει γὰρ πάλιν ἢ λίαν  
 5 λαμπρὰ λέξις τὰ τε ἦθη καὶ τὰς διανοίας.

XXV Περὶ δὲ προβλημάτων καὶ λύσεων, ἐκ πόσων τε καὶ  
 ποίων εἰδῶν ἔστιν, ὧδ' ἂν θεωροῦσιν γένοιτ' ἂν φανερόν.  
 ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἔστι μιμητῆς ὁ ποιητῆς ὥσπερ ἀνεὶ ζωγράφος ἢ τις  
 ἄλλος εἰκονοποιός, ἀνάγκη μιμῆσθαι τριῶν ὄντων τὸν ἀρι-  
 10 θμὸν ἐν τι αἰεὶ, ἢ γὰρ οἷα ἦν ἢ ἔστιν, ἢ οἷα φασιν καὶ δοκεῖ,  
 ἢ οἷα εἶναι δεῖ. ταῦτα δ' ἐξαγγέλλεται λέξει <ἢ κυρίως 2  
 ὀνόμασιν> ἢ καὶ γλιώτταις καὶ μεταφοραῖς· καὶ πολλὰ πάθη

30. <ὄ> Οἰδίπους Bywater: Οἰδίπου Tucker Λάιος Riccardianus 16:  
 ἰόλαος A<sup>c</sup>: ἰόλαος cett. 33. ἀνήρητο A<sup>c</sup> 35. ἀποδέχασθαι apogr.  
 ἄτοπον <ὄν> scripsi: τὸ ἄτοπον Par. 2038: ἄτοπον codd. cett. ἄτοπον  
 quidem pro ἄτοπον τι nonnunquam usurpari solet, e.g. ἄτοπον ποιεῖν (Dem.  
 F.L. § 71, 337), ἄτοπον λέγειν (Plat. Symp. 175 A); sed in hoc loco vix  
 ea locutio defendi potest 1460 b l. ποιήσειε Heinsius: ποιήσει codd.  
 ἐποίησεν Spengel 5. τὰ τε] τὰ δὲ A<sup>c</sup> 7. ποίων apogr.: ποίων ἂν A<sup>c</sup>  
 9. τὸν ἀριθμὸν (vel τῷ ἀριθμῷ) apogr.: τῶν ἀριθμῶν A<sup>c</sup> 11. ἢ οἷα apogr.:  
 οἷα A<sup>c</sup> <ἢ κυρίως ὀνόμασιν> conji. Vahlen: <ἢ κυρία> Gomperz  
 12. καὶ ὄσ' ἄλλα πάθη conji. Vahlen

irrational should, if possible, be excluded; or, at all events, it should lie outside the action of the play (as, in the Oedipus, the hero's ignorance as to the manner of Laius' death); not within the drama,—as in the Electra, the messenger's account of the Pythian games; or, as in the Mysians, the man who comes from Tegea to Mysia without speaking. The plea that otherwise the plot would have been ruined, is ridiculous; such a plot should not in the first instance be constructed. But once the irrational has been introduced and an air of likelihood imparted to it, we must accept it in spite of the absurdity. Take even the irrational incidents in the Odyssey, where Odysseus is left upon the shore of Ithaca. How intolerable even these might have been would be apparent if an inferior poet were to treat the subject.

1480 b As it is, the absurdity is veiled by the poetic charm with which the poet invests it.

The diction should be elaborated in the pauses of the action, where there is no expression of character or thought. For, conversely, character and thought are merely obscured by a diction that is over brilliant.

XXV With respect to critical difficulties and their solutions, the number and nature of the sources from which they may be drawn may be thus exhibited.

The poet being an imitator, like a painter or any other artist, must of necessity imitate one of three objects,—things as they were or are, things as they are said or thought to be, or things as they ought to be. The vehicle of expression is language,—either current terms or, it may be, rare words or metaphors. There are also many modifications of language, which we

τῆς λέξεως ἐστὶ, δίδομεν γὰρ ταῦτα τοῖς ποιηταῖς. πρὸς δὲ 3  
 τούτοις οὐχ ἡ αὐτὴ ὀρθότης ἐστὶν τῆς πολιτικῆς καὶ τῆς  
 15 ποιητικῆς οὐδὲ ἄλλης τέχνης καὶ ποιητικῆς. αὐτῆς δὲ τῆς  
 ποιητικῆς διττὴ ἁμαρτία, ἡ μὲν γὰρ καθ' αὐτήν, ἡ δὲ κατὰ  
 συμβεβηκός. εἰ μὲν γάρ <τι> προείλετο μιμήσασθαι, <μὴ 4  
 ὀρθῶς δὲ ἐμιμήσατο δι' > ἀδυναμίαν, αὐτῆς ἡ ἁμαρτία· εἰ δὲ  
 τῷ προελέσθαι μὴ ὀρθῶς, ἀλλὰ τὸν ἵππον <ἄμ' > ἄμφω τὰ  
 20 δεξιὰ προβεβληκότα ἢ τὸ καθ' ἐκάστην τέχνην ἁμάρτημα  
 οἶον τὸ κατ' ἰατρικὴν ἢ ἄλλην τέχνην [ἢ ἀδύνατα πεποιήται]  
 ὁποιαοῦν, οὐ καθ' ἑαυτήν. ὥστε δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτιμήματα ἐν τοῖς  
 προβλήμασιν ἐκ τούτων ἐπισκοποῦντα λύειν. πρῶτον μὲν τὰ 5  
 πρὸς αὐτὴν τὴν τέχνην· εἰ ἀδύνατα πεποιήται, ἡμάρτηται·  
 25 ἀλλ' ὀρθῶς ἔχει, εἰ τυγχάνει τοῦ τέλους τοῦ αὐτῆς (τὸ γὰρ  
 τέλος εἴρηται), εἰ οὕτως ἐκπληκτικώτερον ἢ αὐτὸ ἢ ἄλλο ποιεῖ  
 μέρος. παράδειγμα ἢ τοῦ Ἔκτορος δῖωξις. εἰ μέντοι τὸ τέλος  
 ἢ μᾶλλον ἢ <μὴ> ἤττον ἐνεδέχετο ὑπάρχειν καὶ κατὰ τὴν  
 περὶ τούτων τέχνην, [ἡμαρτήσθαι] οὐκ ὀρθῶς· δεῖ γὰρ εἰ ἐν-  
 30 δέχεται ὄλως μηδαμῇ ἡμαρτήσθαι. ἔτι ποτέρων ἐστὶ τὸ  
 ἁμάρτημα, τῶν κατὰ τὴν τέχνην ἢ κατ' ἄλλο συμβεβη-  
 κός; ἔλαττον γὰρ εἰ μὴ ἴδρι ὅτι ἔλαφος θήλεια κέρατα  
 οὐκ ἔχει ἢ εἰ ἀμμήτως ἔγραψεν. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐὰν 6  
 ἐπιτιμᾶται ὅτι οὐκ ἀληθῆ, ἀλλ' ἴσως <ὡς> δεῖ—οἶον καὶ

17. τι addidi μὴ ὀρθῶς—δι' addidi: <ὀρθῶς, ἡμαρτε δ' ἐν τῷ μιμή-  
 σασθαι δι' > conl. Vahlen 18. εἰ apogr.: ἢ A<sup>o</sup> 19. τῷ corr. Parisinus  
 2038 (Bywater): τὸ A<sup>o</sup>: <διὰ> τὸ Ueberweg ἄμ' add. Vahlen  
 21. ἢ ἀδύνατα πεποιήται secl. Düntzer: ἀδύνατα πεποιήται (deleto ἢ) post  
 ὁποιαοῦν traiecit Christ 22. ὁποῖαν οὖν A<sup>o</sup>: ὁποιαοῦν vulg.: ὁποῖ' ἂν οὖν  
 Bywater: ὁποιαοῦν Winstanley 23. τὰ (ei sup. scr. m. rec.) A<sup>o</sup> 24. εἰ add.  
 Parisinus 2038: om. cett. 25. αὐτῆς apogr.: αὐτῆς A<sup>o</sup> 26. εἴρηται] εὐρηται  
 Heinsius: τηρεῖται M. Schmidt 28. ἢ <μὴ> ἤττον Ueberweg: ἤττον  
 A<sup>o</sup>: ἢ ἤττον corr. A<sup>o</sup> apogr. 29. ἡμαρτήσθαι (μαρτήσθαι pr. A<sup>o</sup>) secl.  
 Bywater, Ussing: ἡμάρτηται Ald.: <μὴ> ἡμαρτήσθαι, Tucker, interpunctio-  
 mutata 32. εἶδει (ἢ sup. scr. m. rec.) A<sup>o</sup> 33. ἢ] η pr. A<sup>o</sup> εἰ  
 ἀμμήτως] η ἀμμήτως (corr. κάμμήτως) A<sup>o</sup> 34. <ὡς> conl. Vahlen

concede to the poets. Add to this, that the standard of correctness is not the same in poetry and politics, any more than in poetry and any other art. Within the art of poetry itself there are two kinds of faults,—those which touch its essence, and those which are accidental. If a poet has chosen to imitate something, <but has imitated it incorrectly> through want of capacity, the error is inherent in the poetry. But if the failure is due to a wrong choice—if he has represented a horse as throwing out both his off legs at once, or introduced technical inaccuracies in medicine, for example, or in any other art—the error is not essential to the poetry. These are the points of view from which we should consider and answer the objections raised by the critics.

First as to matters which concern the poet's own art. If he describes the impossible, he is guilty of an error; but the error may be justified, if the end of the art be thereby attained (the end being that already mentioned),—if, that is, the effect of this or any other part of the poem is thus rendered more striking. A case in point is the pursuit of Hector. If, however, the end might have been as well, or better, attained without violating the special rules of the poetic art, the error is not justified: for every kind of error should, if possible, be avoided.

Again, does the error touch the essentials of the poetic art, or some accident of it? For example,—not to know that a hind has no horns is a less serious matter than to paint it inartistically.

Further, if it be objected that the description is not

35 Σοφοκλῆς ἔφη αὐτὸς μὲν οἴους δεῖ ποιεῖν, Εὐριπίδην δὲ οἴοι  
 εἰσίν—ταύτη λυτέον. εἰ δὲ μηδετέρως, ὅτι οὕτω φασίν· οἶον 7  
 τὰ περὶ θεῶν· ἴσως γὰρ οὔτε βέλτιον οὕτω λέγειν, οὔτ' ἀληθῆ,  
 1461 a ἀλλ' <εἰ> ἔτυχεν ὡσπερ Ξενοφάνει· ἀλλ' οὖν φασι. τὰ δὲ  
 ἴσως οὐ βέλτιον μὲν, ἀλλ' οὕτως εἶχεν, οἶον τὰ περὶ τῶν  
 ὄπλων, “ἔγχεα δὲ σφιν ὄρθ' ἐπὶ σαυρωτήρος.”<sup>1</sup> οὕτω γὰρ τότε  
 ἐνόμιζον, ὡσπερ καὶ νῦν Ἰλλυριοί. περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἢ μὴ 8  
 5 καλῶς ἢ εἰρηταί τινη ἢ πέπρακται, οὐ μόνον σκεπτέον εἰς  
 αὐτὸ τὸ πεπραγμένον ἢ εἰρημένον βλέποντα εἰ σπουδαῖον ἢ  
 φαῦλον, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς τὸν πράττοντα ἢ λέγοντα, πρὸς ὃν ἢ  
 ὅτε ἢ ὅτῃ ἢ οὐ ἔνεκεν, οἶον ἢ μείζονος ἀγαθοῦ, ἵνα γέ-  
 νηται, ἢ μείζονος κακοῦ, ἵνα ἀπογένηται. τὰ δὲ πρὸς τὴν 9  
 10 λέξιν ὀρώντα δεῖ διαλύειν, οἶον γλώττη “οὐρήας μὲν πρῶ-  
 του.”<sup>2</sup> ἴσως γὰρ οὐ τοὺς ἡμίονους λέγει ἀλλὰ τοὺς φύ-  
 λακας, καὶ τὸν Δόλωνα “ὅς ῥ' ἢ τοι εἶδος μὲν ἔην κακός,”<sup>3</sup>  
 οὐ τὸ σῶμα ἀσύμμετρον ἀλλὰ τὸ πρόσωπον αἰσχρόν, τὸ  
 γὰρ εὐειδὲς οἱ Κρήτες εὐπρόσωπον καλοῦσι· καὶ τὸ “ζωρό-  
 15 τερον δὲ κέραιε”<sup>4</sup> οὐ τὸ ἄκρατον ὡς οἰνόφυλξιν ἀλλὰ τὸ  
 θάττον. τὰ δὲ κατὰ μεταφορὰν εἰρηται, οἶον “πάντες μὲν 10

<sup>1</sup> *Iliad* x. 152.<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* i. 50.<sup>3</sup> *Ib.* x. 316.<sup>4</sup> *Ib.* ix. 203.

35. Εὐριπίδην Heinsius: εὐριπίδης codd. (tuetur Gomperz, cf. 1448 a 36 ἀθηναῖοι codd.) 37. οὕτω Riccardianus 16, corr. Vaticanus 1400: οὕτε A°: om. Parisinus 2038 1461 a 1. <εἰ> conl. Vahlen ξενοφάνει vel ξενοφάνης apogr.: ξενοφάνη A°: παρὰ Ξενοφάνει Ritter: <οἱ περὶ> Ξενοφάνη Tucker οὖν Tyrwhitt: οὐ A°: οὕτω Spengel φασί. τὰ δὲ Spengel: φασι τάδε. A° 6. εἰ apogr.: ἢ A° 7. commate distincti post λέγοντα <ἢ> πρὸς ὃν Carroll 8. οἶον ἢ A°: οἶον εἰ apogr. 9. ἢ add. corr. A° apogr. 12. ὅς ῥ' ἢ τοι Vahlen: ὡς ῥήτοι (corr. m. rec. ῥ') A°: ὅς ῥά τοι apogr. ἔην apogr.: εἰ ἦν A° 15. κέραι εἶον τὸ pr. A° 16. τὰ Spengel: τὰ A° πάντες Gräfenhan: ἄλλοι A° et Homerus

true to fact, the poet may perhaps reply,—‘But the objects are as they ought to be’: just as Sophocles said that he drew men as they ought to be; Euripides, as they are. In this way the objection may be met. If, 7 however, the representation be of neither kind, the poet may answer,—‘This is how men say the thing is.’ This applies to tales about the gods. It may well be that these stories are not higher than fact nor yet true to 1461 a fact: they are, very possibly, what Xenophanes says of them. But anyhow, ‘this is what is said.’ Again, a description may be no better than the fact: ‘still, it was the fact’; as in the passage about the arms: ‘Upright upon their butt-ends stood the spears.’ This was the custom then, as it now is among the Illyrians.

Again, in examining whether what has been said or 8 done by some one is poetically right or not, we must not look merely to the particular act or saying, and ask whether it is poetically good or bad. We must also consider by whom it is said or done, to whom, when, in whose interest, or for what end; whether, for instance, it be to secure a greater good, or avert a greater evil.

Other difficulties may be resolved by due regard to the 9 usage of language. We may note a rare word, as in *οὐρῆας μὲν πρῶτον*, where the poet perhaps employs *οὐρῆας* not in the sense of mules, but of sentinels. So, again, of Dolon: ‘ill-favoured indeed he was to look upon.’ It is not meant that his body was ill-shaped, but that his face was ugly; for the Cretans use the word *εὐειδές*, ‘well-favoured,’ to denote a fair face. Again, *ζωρότερον δὲ κέραει*, ‘mix the drink livelier,’ does not mean ‘mix it stronger’ as for hard drinkers, but ‘mix it quicker.’

ῥα θεοί τε καὶ ἀνέρες εὔδον παννύχιοι.”<sup>1</sup> ἅμα δὲ φησιν “ ἦ  
 τοι ὄτ’ ἐς πεδίον τὸ Τρωικὸν ἀθρήσειεν, αὐλῶν συρίγγων  
 θ’ ὄμαδον.”<sup>2</sup> τὸ γὰρ πάντες ἀντὶ τοῦ πολλοὶ κατὰ μετα-  
 20 φορὰν εἴρηται, τὸ γὰρ πᾶν πολὺ τι· καὶ τὸ “ οἷη δ’ ἄμμο-  
 ρος”<sup>3</sup> κατὰ μεταφορὰν, τὸ γὰρ γνωριμώτατον μόνον. κατὰ 11  
 δὲ προσφθίαν, ὡς περ Ἰππίας ἔλυσεν ὁ Θάσιος τὸ “ δίδομεν  
 δέ οἱ”<sup>4</sup> καὶ “ τὸ μὲν οὐ καταπύθεται ὄμβρω.”<sup>5</sup> τὰ δὲ διαιρέ- 12  
 σει, οἷον Ἐμπεδοκλῆς “ αἶψα δὲ θνήτ’ ἐφύοντο, τὰ πρὶν μά-  
 25 θον ἀθάνατ’ <εἶναι> ζωρά τε πρὶν κέκρητο.” τὰ δὲ ἀμφιβολία, 13  
 “ παρῶχην δὲ πλέω νύξ.”<sup>6</sup> τὸ γὰρ πλείω ἀμφίβολόν ἐστιν.  
 τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ἔθος τῆς λέξεως· τῶν κεκραμένων <οἰονοῦν> οἶνόν 14

<sup>1</sup> *Iliad* ii. 1, ἄλλοι μὲν ῥα θεοὶ τε καὶ ἀνέρες ἱπποκορυσταὶ εὔδον παννύχιοι.

*Ib.* x. 1, ἄλλοι μὲν παρὰ νηυσὶν ἀριστῆες Παναχαιῶν εὔδον παννύχιοι.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* x. 11, ἦ τοι ὄτ’ ἐς πεδίον τὸ Τρωικὸν ἀθρήσειεν, θαύμαζεν πυρὰ πολλὰ τὰ καλετο Ἰλιίδι πρὸς, αὐλῶν συρίγγων τ’ ἐνοπήν ὄμαδόν τ’ ἀνθρώπων.

<sup>3</sup> *Ib.* xviii. 489, οἷη δ’ ἄμμορός ἐστι λοστρῶν Ὀκεανοῖο.

<sup>4</sup> *Ib.* xxi. 297, δίδομεν δέ οἱ εὖχος ἀρέσθαι. Sed in *Iliade* ii. 15 (de quo hic agitur) Τρώεσσι δὲ κήδε’ ἐφήπται.

<sup>5</sup> *Ib.* xxiii. 328, τὸ μὲν οὐ καταπύθεται ὄμβρω.

<sup>6</sup> *Ib.* x. 251, μάλα γὰρ νύξ ἀνεταί, ἐγγύθι δ’ ἠώς, ἄστρα δὲ δὴ προβέβηκε, παρῶχην δὲ πλέω νύξ τῶν δύο μοιρῶν, τριτάτη δ’ ἐτι μοῖρα λέλειπται.

17. ἱπποκορυσταὶ (Homerus) post ἀνέρες add. Christ, habuit iam Σ (cf. Arab. ‘ceteri quidem homines et dei qui equis armati insident’) ἀπαντες post εὔδον intercidisse suspicatur Bywater 19. θ’ ὄμαδον Sylburg: τε ὄμαδόν (ὄμαδον apogr.) A<sup>o</sup> τοῦ add. apogr.: om. A<sup>o</sup> 23. δέ οἱ apogr.: δέοι A<sup>o</sup> 25. εἶναι add. Vettori ex Athenaeo x. 423 ζωρά Athenaeus: ζωα codd. τε <δ> πρὶν Gomperz secutus Bergkium κέ- κρητο (i sup. ser. m. rec.) A<sup>o</sup>: κέκριτο apogr.: ἀκρητα Karsten (ed. Empedocles) 26. πλέω A<sup>o</sup>: πλέον apogr.: πλέων Ald. πλείω] πλείον vel πλέω apogr. 27. <ὄσα> τῶν κεκραμένων Vahlen: <ὄσα πο> τῶν κεκρα- μένων Ueberweg: πᾶν κεκραμένων Bursian <οἰονοῦν> Tucker: <ἐνια> olim coniecti

Sometimes an expression is metaphorical, as 'Now all 10 gods and men were sleeping through the night,'—while at the same time the poet says: 'Often indeed as he turned his gaze to the Trojan plain, he marvelled at the sound of flutes and pipes.' 'All' is here used metaphorically for 'many,' all being a species of many. So in the verse,—'alone she hath no part . . .', *οἴη*, 'alone,' is metaphorical; for the best known may be called the only one.

Again, the solution may depend upon accent or 11 ← breathing. Thus Hippias of Thasos solved the difficulties in the lines,—*δίδομεν (διδόμεν) δέ οἱ*, and *τὸ μὲν οὖ (οὐ) καταπύθεται ἄμβροτῶν*.

Or again, the question may be solved by punctuation, 12 ← as in Empedocles,—'Of a sudden things became mortal that before had learnt to be immortal, and things un- mixed before mixed.' ↗

Or again, by ambiguity of construction,—as in 13 ← *παρόχηκεν δὲ πλέω νύξ*, where the word *πλέω* is ambiguous.

Or by the usage of language. Thus any mixed 14 ← drink is called *οἶνος*, 'wine.' Hence Ganymede is said



φασιν εἶναι, [δθεν πεποιήται “ κρημὸς νεοτεύκτου κασσιτέ-  
 ροιο ”] <sup>1</sup> δθεν εἴρηται ὁ Γανυμήδης “ Διὸ οἰνοχοεῖει, ” <sup>2</sup> οὐ πιών-  
 30 των οἶνον, καὶ χαλκείας τοὺς τὸν σίδηρον ἐργαζομένους. εἶη 15  
 δ’ ἂν τοῦτό γε <καὶ> κατὰ μεταφοράν. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ὅταν ὄνομά  
 τι ὑπεναντιώματι δοκῆ σημαίνειν, ἐπισκοπεῖν ποσαχῶς ἂν  
 σημαῖνοι τοῦτο ἐν τῷ εἰρημένῳ, οἷον τὸ “ τῇ ῥ’ ἔσχετο χάλκεον  
 ἔγχος, ” <sup>3</sup> τὸ ταύτη κωλυθῆναι ποσαχῶς ἐνδέχεται. ὠδὶ <δὲ> 16  
 35 [ἢ ὡς] μάλιστ’ ἂν τις ὑπολάβοι, κατὰ τὴν καταντικρὺν ἢ ὡς  
 1461 b Γλαύκων λέγει, ὅτι ἔνια ἀλόγως προυπολαμβάνουσιν καὶ  
 αὐτοὶ καταψηφισάμενοι συλλογίζονται καὶ ὡς εἰρηκότος ὅ  
 τι δοκεῖ ἐπιτιμῶσιν, ἂν ὑπεναντίον ἢ τῇ αὐτῶν οἰήσῃ. τοῦ-  
 το δὲ πέπονθε τὰ περὶ Ἰκάριον. οἴονται γὰρ αὐτὸν Λάκωνα  
 5 εἶναι· ἄτοπον οὖν τὸ μὴ ἐντυχεῖν τὸν Τηλέμαχον αὐτῷ εἰς  
 Λακεδαίμονα ἐλθόντα. τὸ δ’ ἴσως ἔχει ὥσπερ οἱ Κεφαλῆ-  
 κές φασι· παρ’ αὐτῶν γὰρ γῆμαι λέγουσι τὸν Ὀδυσσεά  
 καὶ εἶναι Ἰκάδιον ἀλλ’ οὐκ Ἰκάριον· δι’ ἀμάρτημα δὲ τὸ  
 πρόβλημα εἰκὸς ἐστίν. ὅλως δὲ τὸ ἀδύνατον μὲν πρὸς τὴν 17  
 10 ποίησιν ἢ πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον ἢ πρὸς τὴν δόξαν δεῖ ἀνάγειν.

<sup>1</sup> *Iliad* cxi. 592.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* xx. 234.

<sup>3</sup> *Ib.* xx. 272, τῇ ῥ’ ἔσχετο μέλιων ἐγχος.

28. δθεν—κασσιτέροιο secl. M. Schmidt 29–30. verba δθεν εἴρηται—  
 οἶνον in codd. post ἐργαζομένους posita huc revocavit Maggi e cod. Lampridii  
 29. οἰνοχοεῖει Δ°: οἰνοχοεῖειν apogr. πεινόντων pr. Δ° 31. καὶ add.  
 Heinsius 31–32. ὄνοματι ὑπεναντιώματι Δ° δοκῆ apogr.: δοκεῖ Δ° 33.  
 σημαῖνοι Vahlen (ed. 1): σημαῖοι Δ°: σημήνειεν Parisinus 2038: σημαίνειε  
 alia apographa 33–35. οἷον τὸ <ἐν τῷ> “ τῇ—τὸ ταύτη κωλυθῆναι [ποσα-  
 χῶς] ἐνδέχεται διπλῶς, ἢ πῶς μάλιστ’ ἂν τις κ.τ.λ. M. Schmidt 34. δὲ  
 addidi 35. ἢ ὡς olim secl. Bywater ὠδὶ ἢ <ὠδὶ>, ὡς coni. Vahlen:  
 ὠδὶ δὴ ἴσως Tucker 1461 b 1. εἶνοι Vettori 2. εἰρηκότος ὅ τι Castel-  
 vetro: εἰρηκότες ὅτι Δ° 3. αὐτῶν Parisinus 2038: αὐτῶν codd. 7.  
 αὐτῶν apogr.: αὐτῶν codd. 8. δι’ ἀμάρτημα Maggi: διαμάρτημα codd.  
 δὴ Gomperz: δὲ codd. 9. <εἶναι> εἰκὸς ἐστίν Hermann (fort. recte):  
 εἰκὸς ἐστὶ <γενέσθαι> Gomperz <ἢ> πρὸς Ald. fort. recte

'to pour the wine to Zeus,' though the gods do not drink wine. So too workers in iron are called *χαλκείας*, or workers in bronze. This, however, may also be taken as a metaphor.

Again, when a word seems to involve some incon- 15  
sistency of meaning, we should consider how many  
senses it may bear in the particular passage. For 16  
example: 'there was stayed the spear of bronze'—we  
should ask in how many ways we may take 'being  
checked there.' The true mode of interpretation is the  
1461 b precise opposite of what Glaucon mentions. Critics, he  
says, jump at certain groundless conclusions; they pass  
adverse judgment and then proceed to reason on it; and,  
assuming that the poet has said whatever they happen  
to think, find fault if a thing is inconsistent with their  
own fancy. The question about Icarius has been treated — P  
in this fashion. The critics imagine he was a Lacedae-  
monian. They think it strange, therefore, that Tele-  
machus should not have met him when he went to  
Lacedaemon. But the Cephallenian story may perhaps — P  
be the true one. They allege that Odysseus took a wife  
from among themselves, and that her father was Icadus  
not Icarus. It is merely a mistake, then, that gives  
plausibility to the objection.

In general, the impossible must be justified by 17  
reference to artistic requirements, or to the higher

πρός τε γὰρ τὴν ποίησιν αἰρετώτερον πιθανὸν ἀδύνατον ἢ  
 ἀπίθανον καὶ δυνατόν. <καὶ ἴσως ἀδύνατον> τοιούτους εἶναι,  
 οἴους Ζεῦξις ἔγραφεν· ἀλλὰ βέλτιον· τὸ γὰρ παράδειγμα δεῖ  
 ὑπερέχειν. πρὸς <δ'> ἅ φασιν, τᾶλογα· οὕτω τε καὶ ὅτι ποτὲ  
 15 οὐκ ἄλογόν ἐστιν εἰκὸς γὰρ καὶ παρὰ τὸ εἰκὸς γίνεσθαι. τὰ δ' 18  
 ὑπεναντίως εἰρημένα οὕτω σκοπεῖν, ὥσπερ οἱ ἐν τοῖς λόγοις  
 ἔλεγοι, εἰ τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ πρὸς τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ ὡσαύτως, ὥστε  
 καὶ λυτέον ἢ πρὸς ἃ αὐτὸς λέγει ἢ ὃ ἂν φρόνιμος ὑποθῆ-  
 ται. ὀρθὴ δ' ἐπιτιμήσεις καὶ ἀλογία καὶ μοχθηρία, ὅταν μὴ 19  
 20 ἀνάγκης οὔσης μῆθ' ἐχρήσθαι τῷ ἀλόγῳ, ὥσπερ Εὐριπίδης  
 τῷ Αἰγεί, ἢ τῇ πονηρίᾳ, ὥσπερ ἐν Ὀρέστη τοῦ Μενελάου.  
 τὰ μὲν οὖν ἐπιτιμήματα ἐκ πέντε εἰδῶν φέρουσιν, ἢ γὰρ ὡς 20  
 ἀδύνατα ἢ ὡς ἄλογα ἢ ὡς βλαβερά ἢ ὡς ὑπεναντία ἢ ὡς  
 παρὰ τὴν ὀρθότητα τὴν κατὰ τέχνην. αἱ δὲ λύσεις ἐκ τῶν  
 25 εἰρημένων ἀριθμῶν σκεπτέαι, εἰσὶν δὲ δώδεκα.

**XXVI** Πότερον δὲ βελτίων ἢ ἐποποιικὴ μίμησις ἢ ἡ τραγικὴ,  
 διαπορήσειεν ἄν τις. εἰ γὰρ ἡ ἡττον φορτικὴ βελτίων, τοιαύ-  
 τη δ' ἢ πρὸς βελτίους θεατάς ἐστιν ἀεί, λίαν δῆλον ὅτι ἡ

11. πιθανὸν A<sup>o</sup> 12. ἀπίθανον A<sup>o</sup> <καὶ ἴσως ἀδύνατον> Gomperz,  
 secutus Margolionth ('fortasse enim impossibile est' Arabs): καὶ εἰ ἀδύνατον  
 coniecerat Vahlen 13. οἴους Parisinus 2038: οἴον codd. 14. δ' add.  
 Ueberweg (auctore Vahlens) 16. ὑπεναντίως Twining (cf. Arab. 'quae  
 dicta sunt in modum contrarii'): ὑπεναντία ὡς codd.: ὡς ὑπεναντία Heinsius  
 18. ὥστε καὶ λυτέον M. Schmidt: ὥστε καὶ αὐτὸν codd. φρόνιμος  
 apogr.: φρόνημον (corr. m. rec. φρόνιμον) A<sup>o</sup> 19. ἀλογία καὶ μοχθηρία  
 Vahlen: ἀλογία καὶ μοχθηρία codd. 20. fort. <πρὸς> μῆθ' ἐχρήσθαι  
 Gomperz 21. τῷ Αἰγεί ἢ τῇ margo Riccardiani 16: τῷ αἰγείτῃ A<sup>o</sup> <τῇ> τοῦ con.  
 Vahlen 26. βελτίων apogr.: βέλτιον A<sup>o</sup> 28. δ' ἢ apogr.: δὴ A<sup>o</sup>  
 ἀεί, λίαν Vahlen: δειλίαν codd.

reality, or to received opinion. With respect to the requirements of art, a probable impossibility is to be preferred to a thing improbable and yet possible. Again, it may be impossible that there should be men such as Zeuxis painted. 'Yes,' we say, 'but the impossible is the higher thing; for the ideal type must surpass the reality.' To justify the irrational, we appeal to what is commonly said to be. In addition to which, we urge that the irrational sometimes does not violate reason; just as 'it is probable that a thing may happen contrary to probability.'

Things that sound contradictory should be examined 18 by the same rules as in dialectical refutation—whether the same thing is meant, in the same relation, and in the same sense. We should therefore solve the question by reference to what the poet says himself, or to what is tacitly assumed by a person of intelligence.

The element of the irrational, and, similarly, depravity 19 of character, are justly censured when there is no inner necessity for introducing them. Such is the irrational element in the Aegæus of Euripides, and the badness of Menelaus in the Orestes.

Thus, there are five sources from which critical 20 objections are drawn. Things are censured either as impossible, or irrational, or morally hurtful, or contradictory, or contrary to artistic correctness. The answers should be sought under the twelve heads above mentioned.

XXVI The question may be raised whether the Epic or Tragic mode of imitation is the higher. If the more refined art is the higher, and the more refined in every case is that which appeals to the better sort of audience,

ἅπαντα μιμουμένη φορτική· ὡς γὰρ οὐκ αἰσθανομένων ἂν  
 30 μὴ αὐτὸς προσθῆ, πολλὴν κίνησιν κινοῦνται, οἷον οἱ φαῦλοι  
 αὐληταὶ κυλιόμενοι ἂν δίσκον δέη μιμῆσθαι, καὶ ἔλκοντες  
 τὸν κορυφαῖον ἂν Σκύλλαν αὐλώσιν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τραγωδία 2  
 τοιαύτη ἐστίν, ὡς καὶ οἱ πρότερον τοὺς ὑστέρους αὐτῶν φῶντο  
 ὑποκριτάς· ὡς λίαν γὰρ ὑπερβάλλοντα πίθηκον ὁ Μυυνίσκος  
 35 τὸν Καλλιπιδῆν ἐκάλει, τοιαύτη δὲ δόξα καὶ περὶ Πιν-  
 1462 a δάρου ἦν· ὡς δ' οὗτοι ἔχουσι πρὸς αὐτούς, ἡ ὅλη τέχνη  
 πρὸς τὴν ἐποποιίαν ἔχει. τὴν μὲν οὖν πρὸς θεατὰς ἐπιεικεῖς  
 φασιν εἶναι <οἱ> οὐδὲν δέονται τῶν σχημάτων, τὴν δὲ τραγι-  
 κὴν πρὸς φαύλους· εἰ οὖν φορτικὴ, χείρων δῆλον ὅτι ἂν εἶη. 3  
 5 πρῶτον μὲν οὖν οὐ τῆς ποιητικῆς ἢ κατηγορίας ἀλλὰ τῆς  
 ὑποκριτικῆς, ἐπεὶ ἔστι περιεργάζεσθαι τοῖς σημείοις καὶ ῥαψφ-  
 δοῦντα, ὅπερ [ἐστὶ] Σωσίστρατος, καὶ διάδοντα, ὅπερ ἐποίει  
 Μνασίθεος ὁ Ὀπούντιος. εἶτα οὐδὲ κινήσεις ἅπαντα ἀποδοκι-  
 μαστέα, εἴπερ μὴδ' ὄρχησις, ἀλλ' ἢ φαύλων, ὅπερ καὶ Καλλιπ-  
 10 πιδῆ ἐπετιμᾶτο καὶ νῦν ἄλλοις ὡς οὐκ ἐλευθέρας γυναικάς  
 μιμουμένων. ἔτι ἡ τραγωδία καὶ ἄνευ κινήσεως ποιεῖ τὸ αὐτῆς,  
 ὥσπερ ἡ ἐποποιία· διὰ γὰρ τοῦ ἀναγινώσκειν φανερὰ ὅποια  
 τίς ἐστίν· εἰ οὖν ἐστὶ τὰ γ' ἄλλα κρείττων, τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἀναγ-  
 καῖον αὐτῇ ὑπάρχειν. ἔστι δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πάντ' ἔχει ὅσαπερ ἡ ἐπο- 4  
 15 ποιία (καὶ γὰρ τῷ μέτρῳ ἔξῃσσι χρῆσθαι), καὶ ἔτι οὐ μικρὸν

30. κινοῦνται apogr.: κινούντα A<sup>o</sup> 1462 a 1. ἔχουσι apogr.: δ' ἔχουσι  
 A<sup>o</sup> αὐτοῦς Hermann: αὐτοῦς codd. 3. οἱ add. Vettori: ἐπεὶ Christ  
 σχημάτων τὴν apogr.: σχημά|τα αὐτῆν (τα αὐ m. rec. in litura) A<sup>o</sup>  
 4. εἰ apogr.: ἡ A<sup>o</sup> 5. οὖν add. Parisinus 2038: om. cett. 7.  
 ἐστὶ neol. Spengel διάδοντα Maggi: διάδοντα apogr.: διαδόντα A<sup>o</sup>  
 8. ὁ ποῦντιος A<sup>o</sup> 10. ἐπιτιμᾶτο pr. A<sup>o</sup> 11. αὐτῆς apogr.: αὐτῆς A<sup>o</sup>  
 12. ὅποια A<sup>o</sup> 14. αὐτῇ apogr.: αὐτῇ A<sup>o</sup> ἔστι δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ Gompertz:  
 ἔστι δ', ἐτι Usener: ἔπειτα διότι codd.

the art which imitates anything and everything is manifestly most unrefined. The audience is supposed to be too dull to comprehend unless something of their own is thrown in by the performers, who therefore indulge in restless movements. Bad flute-players twist and twirl, if they have to represent 'the quoit-throw,' or hustle the coryphaeus when they perform the 'Scylla.' Tragedy, <sup>2</sup> it is said, has this same defect. We may compare the opinion that the older actors entertained of their successors. Mynniscus used to call Callippides 'ape' on account of the extravagance of his action, and the same <sup>1462 a</sup> view was held of Pindarus. Tragic art, then, as a whole, stands to Epic in the same relation as the younger to the elder actors. So we are told that Epic poetry is addressed to a cultivated audience, who do not need gesture; Tragedy, to an inferior public. Being then <sup>3</sup> unrefined, it is evidently the lower of the two.

Now, in the first place, this censure attaches not to the poetic but to the histrionic art; for gesticulation may be equally overdone in epic recitation, as by Sosi-stratus, or in lyrical competition, as by Mnasiheus the Opuntian. Next, all action is not to be condemned—any more than all dancing—but only that of bad performers. Such was the fault found in Callippides, as also in others of our own day, who are censured for representing degraded women. Again, Tragedy like Epic poetry produces its effect even without action; it reveals its power by mere reading. If, then, in all other respects it is superior, this fault, we say, is not inherent in it.

And superior it is, because it has all the epic <sup>4</sup> elements—it may even use the epic metre—with the

μέρος τὴν μουσικὴν καὶ τὰς ὄψεις, δι' ἃς αἱ ἡδοναὶ συνίστανται ἐναργέστατα· εἶτα καὶ τὸ ἐναργές ἔχει καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀναγνώσει καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἔργων· ἔτι τὸ ἐν ἐλάττωι μήκει τὸ τέλος 5  
 1462 b τῆς μμήσεως εἶναι (τὸ γὰρ ἀθροώτερον ἤδιον ἢ πολλῶ κεκραμένον τῷ χρόνῳ· λέγω δ' οἶον εἴ τις τὸν Οἰδίπου θείη τὸν Σοφοκλέους ἐν ἔπεσιν ὄσοις ἢ Ἰλιάς)· ἔτι ἤττον μία ἢ 6  
 μίμησις ἢ τῶν ἐποποιῶν (σημείον δέ· ἐκ γὰρ ὅποιασούν 5 [μμήσεως] πλείους τραγῳδαίαι γίνονται), ὥστε ἐὰν μὲν ἕνα μῦθον ποιῶσιν, ἢ βραχέως δεικνύμενον μῦθρον φαίνεσθαι, ἢ ἀκολουθοῦντα τῷ συμμέτρῳ μήκει ὑδαρῆ. \* \* λέγω δέ οἶον ἐὰν ἐκ πλείονων πράξεων ἢ συγκειμένη, ὥσπερ ἢ Ἰλιάς ἔχει πολλὰ τοιαῦτα μέρη καὶ ἢ Ὀδύσεια ἃ καὶ καθ' 10  
 ἑαυτὰ ἔχει μέγεθος· καίτοι ταῦτα τὰ ποιήματα συνέστηκεν ὡς ἐνδέχεται ἄριστα καὶ ὅτι μάλιστα μιᾶς πράξεως μίμησις. εἰ οὖν τούτοις τε διαφέρει πᾶσιν καὶ ἔτι τῷ τῆς τέχνης 7 ἔργῳ (δεῖ γὰρ οὐ τὴν τυχοῦσαν ἡδονὴν ποιεῖν αὐτὰς ἀλλὰ τὴν εἰρημένην), φανερόν ὅτι κρείττων ἂν εἴη μᾶλλον τοῦ 15  
 τέλους τυγχάνουσα τῆς ἐποποιίας.

περὶ μὲν οὖν τραγῳδίας καὶ ἐποποιίας, καὶ αὐτῶν 8 καὶ τῶν εἰδῶν καὶ τῶν μερῶν, καὶ πόσα καὶ τί διαφέρει, καὶ τοῦ εὖ ἢ μὴ τίνες αἰτίαι, καὶ περὶ ἐπιτιμήσεων καὶ λύσεων, εἰρήσθω τοσαῦτα. \* \* \*

16. καὶ τὰς ὄψεις secl. Spengel : post ἐναργέστατα collocavit Gomperz : καὶ τὴν ὄψιν Ald. δι' ἃς (vel aīs) conl. Vahlen : δι' ἧς codd. 17. ἀναγνώσει Maggi : ἀναγνωρίσει A<sup>c</sup> 18. ἔτι τὸ Winstanley : ἔτι τῷ codd.  
 1462 b 1. ἡδιον ἢ Maggi : ἡδεῖον ἢ Riccardianus 16 : ἡδονῆ A<sup>c</sup> 2. τὸν διπουν pr. A<sup>c</sup> θείη bis A<sup>c</sup> 3. ἢ Ἰλιάς Riccardianus 16 : ἢ Ἰλιάς (fuit Ἰλιάς) A<sup>c</sup> μία ἢ Bywater : ἢ μία A<sup>c</sup> : μία ὅποιασούν Riccardianus 16  
 5. μμήσεως secl. Gomperz 6. μείουρον Parisinus 2038 7. συμμέτρῳ Bernays : τοῦ μέτρου codd. : fort. τοῦ μετρίου (cf. 1458 b 12) post ὑδαρῆ, <ἐὰν δὲ πλείους> Ald. : <λέγω δὲ οἶον \* \* ἂν δὲ μῆ, οὐ μία ἢ μίμησις> conl. Vahlen : <ἐὰν δὲ πλείους, οὐ μία ἢ μίμησις> Teichmüller : lacunam aliter supplevi, vide versionem 9. ἃ add. apogr. 10. καίτοι ταῦτα τὰ Riccardianus 16 : καὶ τοιαῦτ' ἄττα A<sup>c</sup> 18. ἢ apogr. : εἰ A<sup>c</sup>

music and scenic effects as important accessories; and these produce the most vivid of pleasures. Further, it has vividness of impression in reading as well as in representation. Moreover, the art attains its end within 5  
 1462 b narrower limits; for the concentrated effect is more pleasurable than one which is spread over a long time and so diluted. What, for example, would be the effect of the Oedipus of Sophocles, if it were cast into a form as long as the Iliad? Once more, the Epic imitation 6 has less unity; as is shown by this, that any Epic poem will furnish subjects for several tragedies. Thus if the story adopted by the poet has a strict unity, it must either be concisely told and appear truncated; or, if it conform to the Epic canon of length, it must seem weak and watery. <Such length implies some loss of unity,> if, I mean, the poem is constructed out of several actions, like the Iliad and the Odyssey, which have many such parts, each with a certain magnitude of its own. Yet these poems are as perfect as possible in structure; each is, in the highest degree attainable, an imitation of a single action.

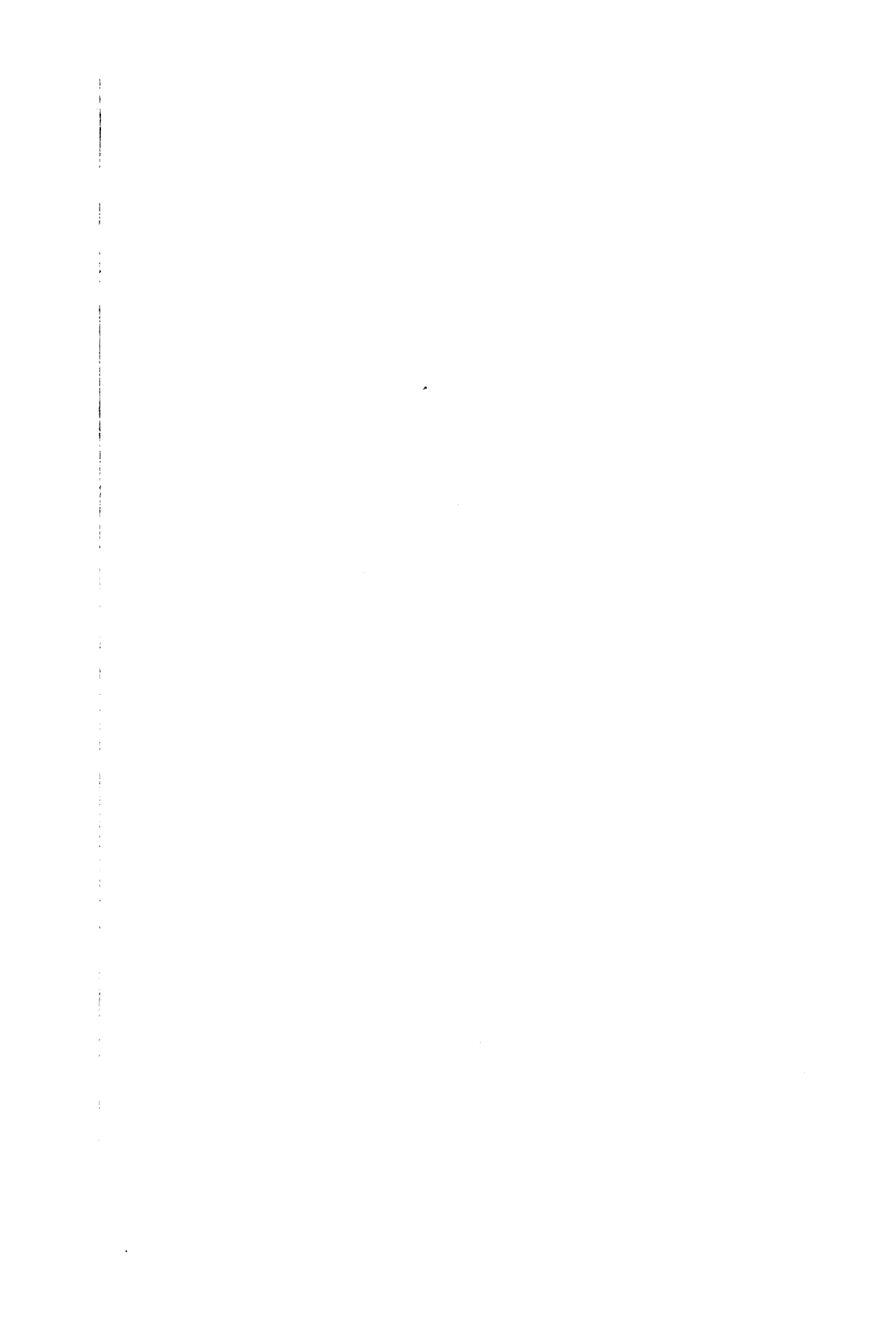
If, then, Tragedy is superior to Epic poetry in all these 7 respects, and, moreover, fulfils its specific function better as an art—for each art ought to produce, not any chance pleasure, but the pleasure proper to it, as already stated—it plainly follows that Tragedy is the higher art, as attaining its end more perfectly.

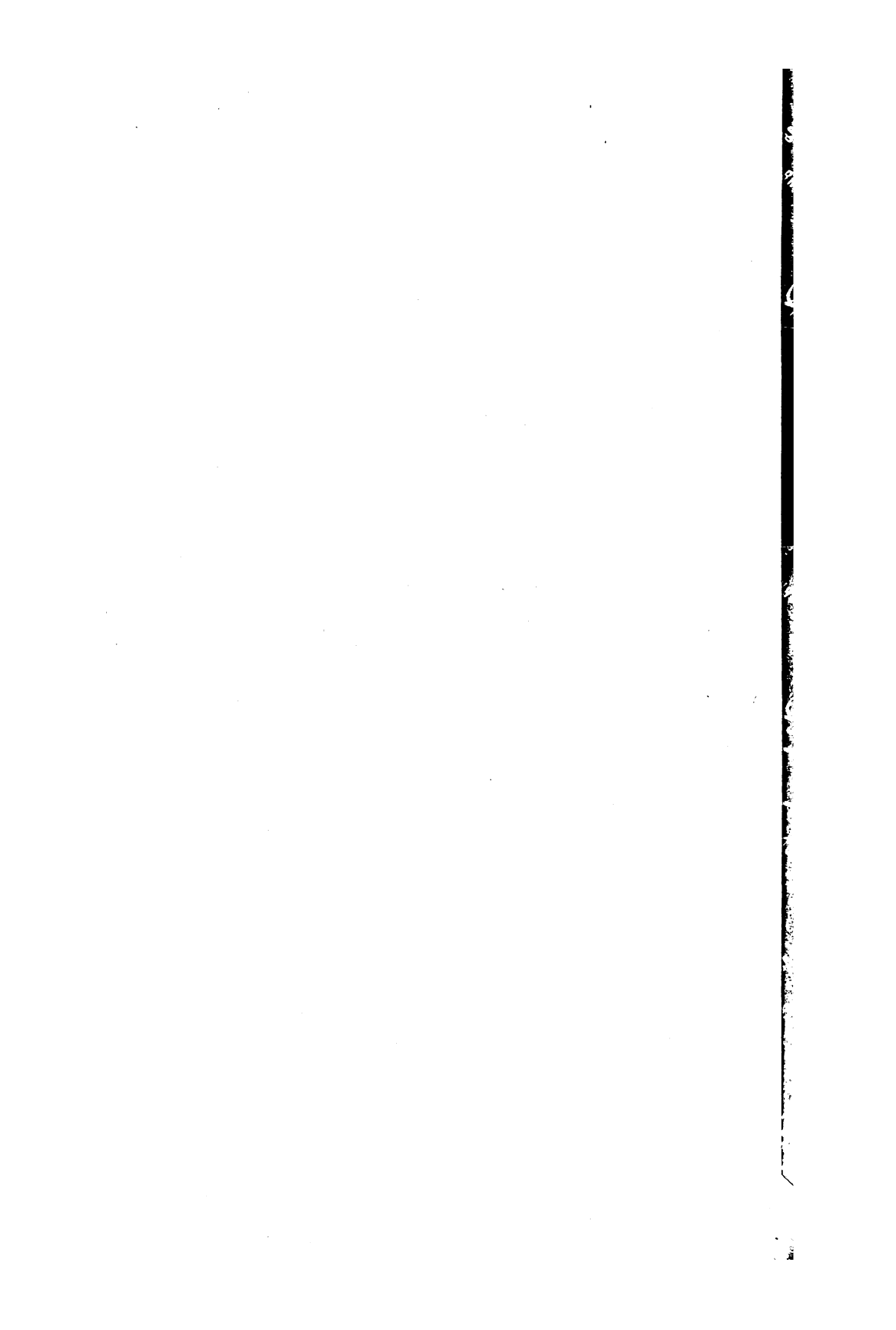
Thus much may suffice concerning Tragic and Epic 8 poetry in general; their several kinds and parts, with the number of each and their differences; the causes that make a poem good or bad; the objections of the critics and the answers to these objections. \* \* \*



2







RETURN TO

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

**RETURN CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**  
**TO → 202 Main Library**

|                 |   |   |
|-----------------|---|---|
| LOAN PERIOD 1   | 2 | 3 |
| <b>HOME USE</b> |   |   |
| 4               | 5 | 6 |

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS**  
 1-month loans may be renewed by calling 842-3405  
 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing the books to the Circulation Desk  
 Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**

|                          |                                |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>APR 31 1985</b>       |                                | <i>Jan 10</i>            |
|                          | <b>JUL 1 1987</b>              |                          |
| REC. CH. APR 30 1985     |                                | <b>RECEIVED BY</b>       |
| <b>RECEIVED BY</b>       |                                | <b>DEC 20 1989</b>       |
| <b>AUG 21 1985</b>       |                                |                          |
| <b>JUN 27 1985</b>       |                                | <b>CIRCULATION DEPT.</b> |
| <b>CIRCULATION DEPT.</b> | <b>AUTO. DISC. JUN 17 1987</b> |                          |
| <b>MAY 25 1986</b>       |                                |                          |
| <b>MAY 5 1986</b>        | <b>MAY 23 1988</b>             |                          |
|                          | <b>MAR 08 1988</b>             |                          |
|                          | <b>DEC 1 1988</b>              |                          |
|                          | <i>MAY 20 1980</i>             |                          |
|                          | <b>APR 20 1989</b>             |                          |
| <b>MAY 30 1986</b>       |                                | <b>DEC 07 1989</b>       |

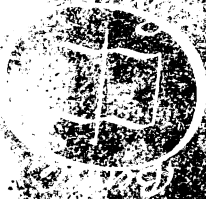
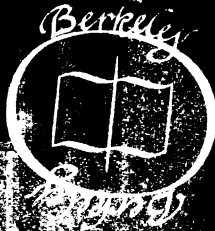
R  
O  
U

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY  
 FORM NO. DD6, 60m, 1/83 BERKELEY, CA 94720

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000756859



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY